(_) (_)

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

الصف الخامس الابتدائى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

CONNECT

By a group of supervisors

Parents' Guide
دليل ولى الأمر

طبعة جديدة

طبقاً لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤



تطبيق التعلم التفاعلى







FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

5th Primary
2024
FIRST TERM

(_) (_)

1

THEME

I discover myself







(_) (_)



Unit 1 We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا

Aims of Unit One : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
  - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث، وأكتب عن أنواع الطعام المختلفة.
- listen to a conversation about favorite food.
  - أستمع إلى محادثة عن الطعام المفضل.
- practice making suggestions with "how about".
  - أتدرب على تقديم اقتراحات باستخدام (how about) بمعنى "ماذا عن".
- read a fairy tale.
  - أقرأ قصة خيالية.
- practice saying vowel sounds.
  - أتدرب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة.
- understand decimal fractions.
  - أفهم الكسور العشرية.
- write a recipe.
  - أكتب وصفة طعام.
- research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.
  - أبحث وأصنع ملصقًا عن الفاكهة والخضروات التي تنمو في مصر.

(__) (__)

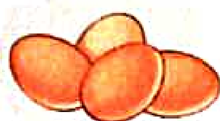
Lesson 1 ▶ Food and Drink



I Vocabulary

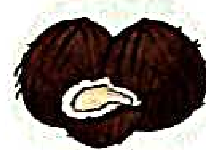
Key vocabulary


beans فول


eggs بيض


carrots جزر


onions بصل


coconuts جوز هند


chocolate شيكولاته


lemons ليمون (أصفر)


pineapples أناناس


limes ليمون حامض (أخضر)

Extra vocabulary

favorite	مفضل	a little	قليل	pot	إناء / وعاء
chicken	دجاج	healthy	صحي	fresh	طازج
mango	مانجو	unhealthy	غير صحي	uncle	عم / خال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
collect	يجمع	collected
plant	يزرع	planted
love	يحب	loved
pick	يقطف	picked

Irregular

Present		Past
grow	ينمو	grew
sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشتري	bought

Do you know ?
Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.

هل تعلم أن ؟
لا ينمو الأناناس على الأشجار! إنما ينمو على الأرض

(_) (_)

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the market	في السوق	on the ground	على الأرض
That's easy!	هذا سهل!	It's OK to + (inf.)	لا بأس أن + (مصدر الفعل)
in the garden	في الحديقة		

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Fareeda's favorite food	favorite	Fareeda's favorite food is chocolate.
	unhealthy	Chocolate is unhealthy if you eat a lot.
	chicken	Chicken is healthy.
	collect - sell	Fareeda's uncle collects fresh eggs and sells them at the market.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I buy fresh vegetables at the ....
   a. garden b. market c. beach d. bank
2. Rabbits' favorite food is ....
   a. limes b. eggs c. carrots d. onions
3. .... is delicious but not healthy.
   a. Lime b. Chicken c. Chocolate d. Meat
4. They raise chickens to get fresh .... every day.
   a. milk b. onions c. eggs d. pineapples
5. .... is my favorite healthy fruit.
   a. Pineapple b. Milk c. Chocolate d. Chicken
6. I always have .... and eggs for breakfast.
   a. pens b. bones c. beans d. balls
7. A farmer .... onions and potatoes.
   a. throws b. draws c. reads d. grows

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

(_) (_)

II Listening and Reading

⭐ **Listen and read.** استمع و اقرأ.

Does Fareeda think chocolate is healthy ?



What's your favorite food, Fareeda ?
ما هو طعامك المفضل يا فريدة ؟



That's easy ! It's chocolate.
هذا سؤال سهل ! إنها الشيكولاتة.





Mmm ... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it ?
ممم ... أحب الشيكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك ؟



I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.
أعتقد أنه لا بأس من تناول القليل منها. لكن بالفعل، من غير الصحي أن تأكلي منها الكثير.



What's your favorite healthy food ? ما هو طعامك الصحي المفضل ؟



Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.
أوه، أنا أحب الدجاج وأحب السمك. لكن المفضل لدى هو المانجو. لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.



I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.
أنا أحب المانجو أيضًا. ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو. لدينا شجرة ليمون حامض وشجرة ليمون أصفر.

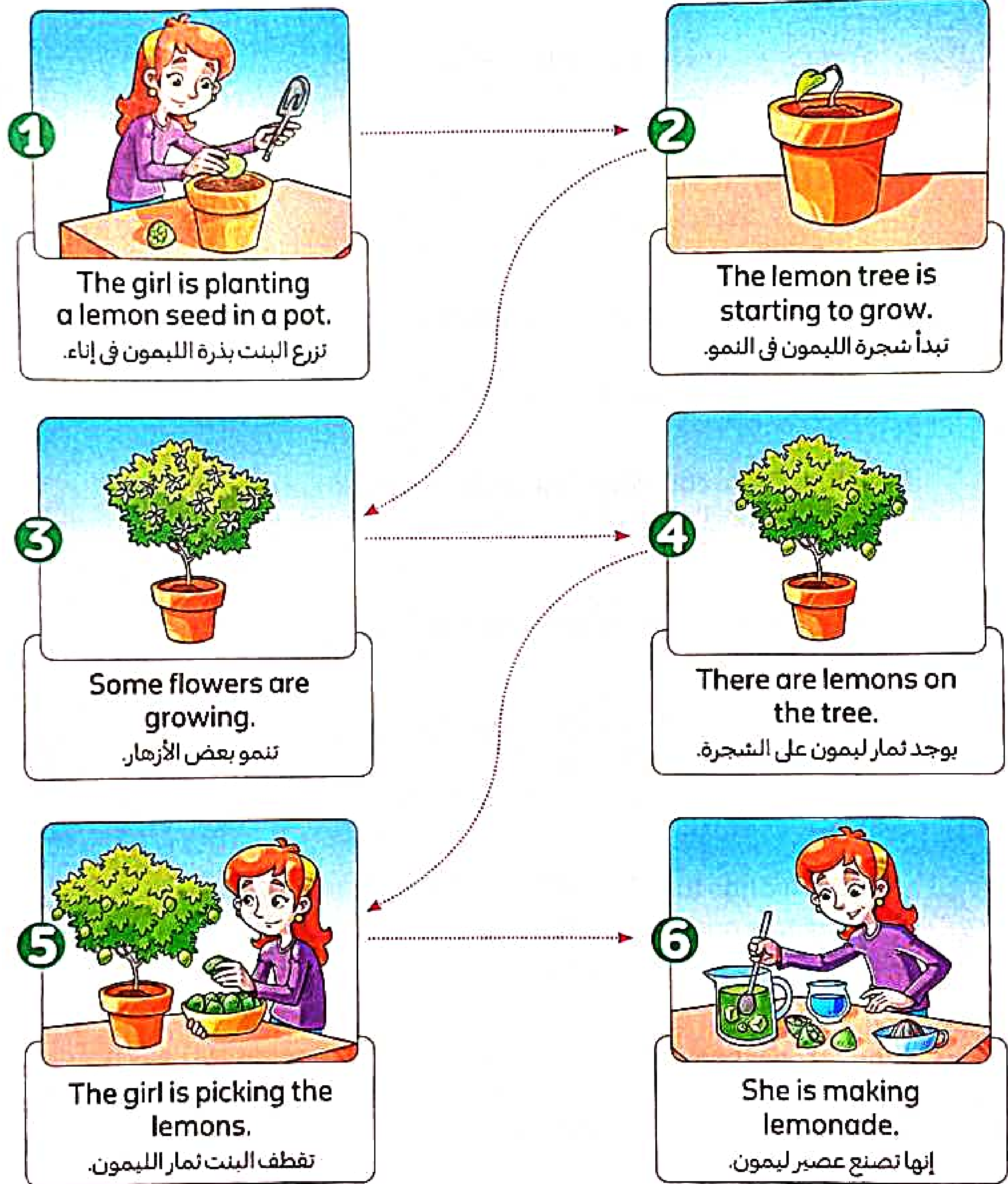


My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.
يزرع عمي البصل والبطاطس. لديه دجاج أيضًا. يقوم بجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم وفي بعض الأحيان يقوم ببيعه في السوق.

• Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly.
- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة

Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

How we grow lemons كيف نزرع الليمون



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, read and identify how we grow lemons.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويتعرف على كيفية زراعة الليمون.

(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1. Sara and her family love practicing different sports. ☐
2. Ali likes playing football. ☐
3. Ali plays basketball in the club. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Donia's favorite .... is chocolate.
2. .... is unhealthy.
3. Donia likes chicken, fish and ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My uncle planted an apple tree in his ....
   a. office   b. library   c. room   d. garden
2. We buy fruits and vegetables at the ....
   a. bakery   b. market   c. library   d. school
3. Chocolate .... healthy if you eat a lot.
   a. can't   b. didn't   c. isn't   d. don't
4. I think it's OK to .... a little chocolate.
   a. eats   b. eating   c. ate   d. eat

4 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Eating too much chocolate	☐ a. in our garden.
2. Chicken is my favorite	☐ b. is unhealthy.
3. My dad grows lemons	☐ c. food ?
4. What's your favorite	☐ d. healthy food.
	☐ e. you doing ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. market – onions – sells – He – the – at.

....

2. like – and – I – fish – chicken.

....

3. He - fresh - collects - every - eggs - day.

....

4. garden - mangoes - We - in - our - grow.

....

6 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name's Dina. I'm in grade five. I like healthy food. I help my mum in the kitchen. We make chickens, beans and potatoes. My brother likes to eat chocolate. I like chocolate, too, but I don't eat a lot. Chocolate is delicious, but not healthy. At the weekend, we visit our uncle. He grows trees in his garden. He has a lemon and lime tree. My uncle helps me grow a mango tree. It's interesting.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dina's brother likes ....
   a. chicken b. chocolate c. potatoes d. lime
2. The underlined word "**healthy**" is the opposite of ....
   a. unhealthy b. nice c. delicious d. good

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What unhealthy food is there in the text?
   ....
4. What plants does Dina's uncle grow in his garden?
   ....

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

ali thinks ice cream is healthy

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب موضوع إنشائي مكون من (٤٠) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Your favorite food مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- What's your favorite food?
- Do you like healthy food?

....
....
....
....
....
....

(__) (__)

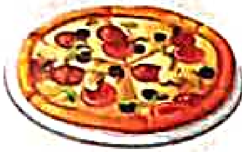
Lesson 2

▶ My shopping list
▶ Language focus



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


pizza بيتزا

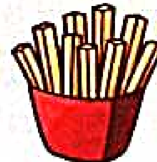

grapes عنب


honey عسل


yogurt زبادى


ful medames فول مدمس


mahalabia مهلبية (نوع من الطعام حلو المذاق)


french fries بطاطس مقلية



shopping list قائمة تسوق

Extra vocabulary

dinner	وجبة العشاء	cookies	كعك محلى	nutrients	العناصر الغذائية
unpack	يفرغ الحقيبة	price	ثمن	delicious	لذيذ
cucumbers	خيار	dessert	تحلية/الحلو (بعد الأكل)	nuts	مكسرات
customer	زبون	cupboard	دولاب / خزانة	bowl	سلطانية
burger	برجر	fried eggs	بيض مقلى	diaries	يوميات / مذكرات
lucky	محظوظ	boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق	top	قمة
juicy	كثير العصارة	jam	مربى	market trader	تاجر في السوق
fridge	ثلاجة	market seller	بائع في السوق		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for lunch	لوجبة الغداء	act out	يمثل / يتصرف
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن	of course	بالطبع
in total	في المجموع الكلى	sensible choices	اختيارات منطقية

Tip! : Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.
نصيحة ! : تأكد من تناولك لنظام غذائى متوازن حتى يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التى يحتاجها



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We use milk to make ....
   a. grapes   b. honey   c. yogurt   d. nuts
2. The .... list makes me remember what I want to buy.
   a. cooking   b. driving   c. playing   d. shopping
3. Bees make ...., so they are very useful insects.
   a. tea   b. juice   c. honey   d. shopping
4. He cuts the potatoes to make ....
   a. french fries   b. ful medames   c. jam   d. milk

II Listening and Reading



Narrator 1 : Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes ?

Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they ?





They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

OK. We'll have a kilogram, please.







How about buying some carrots too ?

No, thank you.





Mom, please can we have a pineapple ?

Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.





There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة



Narrator 2 :

I really like coming to your house, Grandma.

I like it when you visit me, Nada.







We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.

I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now ?





Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut ?

Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.





Narrator 3 :

Ashraf, will you come to the market with me ?

Yes, of course. What do we need to buy ?





We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday ? Uncle Faisal is coming.

Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!

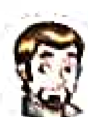




OK, are there any onions in the fridge ?

No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.




Narrator 4 : OK, what do we need to get, Amal?

Mom says three lemons and some eggs.



Here are the lemons.

The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!



Is it on Mom's list?

No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?



OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal!


Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please?

Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!



Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays – it isn't very healthy.

OK. Where shall I put the cookies?



Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one – they aren't very healthy!

OK. I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.



Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

Yes, it's there with the carrots.



Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight? I bought a bag of nuts.

Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!


⭐ **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

1
Hello, what would you like ?
مرحبًا، ماذا تريدين ؟
I would like some carrots, please.
أود بعض من الجزر، من فضلك.

2
Are there any tomatoes ?
هل يوجد أي من ثمار الطماطم ؟
Yes, look! There are lots of tomatoes.
نعم، انظري ! يوجد الكثير من ثمار الطماطم.

3
Would you like some oranges ?
هل تودين بعض من البرتقال ؟
Yes, of course.
نعم، بالطبع.
Yes, please. Can I have some grapes too ?
نعم، من فضلك. هل يمكنني الحصول على بعض العنب أيضًا ؟

4
How about buying some lemons and pineapples, too ?
ما رأيك في شراء بعض من الليمون والأناناس أيضًا ؟
No, thanks. That's all I need for now.
لا، شكرًا. هذا كل ما أريده الآن .

III Language functions

1 Making suggestions ١. تقديم الاقتراحات

How about + (noun) / (inf. + ing) ... ? ماذا عن .... ؟



How about having fish for lunch ?
ماذا عن تناول السمك في وجبة الغداء ؟



• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read.
1. Help your child to learn how to make suggestions.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يقدم اقتراحات.

2 Asking and answering questions about food at the market

٢. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الطعام في السوق



What would you like?
ماذا تودين؟

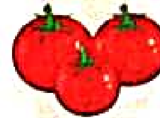


I'd like some oranges.
أود بعض من البرتقال.





Are there any tomatoes?
هل يوجد أي من ثمار الطماطم؟



Yes, there are.
نعم، يوجد.



3 Offering something politely

٣. عرض شيء ما بطريقة مهذبة

- Would you like some + ... (اسم جمع / اسم لا يعد)? — هل تود بعض من ....؟
- Would you like a/an + ... (اسم مفرد (يعد))? — هل تود ....؟

◄ عند الإجابة بالموافقة نستخدم [Yes, please.] / [Yes, of course.].



Would you like some lemonade?
هل تريدين بعضًا من عصير الليمون؟



Yes, please.
نعم، من فضلك.



Note : I would = I'd

4 Asking for something politely

٤. طلب شيء بطريقة مهذبة

- Can I have + ... (noun), please? — هل يمكنني أن أحصل على .... من فضلك؟



Can I have some water, please?
هل يمكنني الحصول على بعض من الماء، من فضلك؟



Yes, of course.
نعم، بالطبع.



Notes for parents

2. Help your child ask and answer questions about food at the market. - ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب عن الأطعمة في السوق
3. Help your child know how to offer something politely. - ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يعرض شئ ما بطريقة مهذبة
4. Help your child learn how to ask for something politely. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يطلب شئ ما بطريقة مهذبة

IV Language focus

1 Countable and uncountable nouns الأسماء التى تعد والتى لا تعد

Countable nouns				Uncountable nouns			
• الأسماء التى (تعد) لها (مفرد وجمع). • الاسم المفرد الذى (تعد) يسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).				• الأسماء التى لا تعد (ليس لها جمع) وتعامل معاملة المفرد. • الاسم الذى (لا تعد) لا يُسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).			
an apple	تفاحة	apples		rice	أرز	water	ماء
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes		salt	ملح	sugar	سكر
a man	رجل	men		cheese	جبن	milk	لبن

Usage :

▶ We use "a" with singular countable nouns that begin with a consonant.

◀ نستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفرد المعدودة التى تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

Ex. - I would like a banana, please.

▶ We use "an" with singular countable nouns that begin with a vowel.

◀ نستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفرد المعدودة التى تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

Ex. - I would like an orange, please.

2 some - any

A. some بعض

Usage : We use "some" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.

◀ نستخدم "some" مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء الغير معدودة فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة.

1. Countable nouns : ١. مع الأسماء التى تعد :

some books   some chairs   some eggs

▶ - I have some books.

2. Uncountable nouns : ٢. مع الأسماء التى لا تعد لتشير إلى كمية غير محددة :

some water   some sugar   some salad

▶ - She has some juice.

◀ لاحظ أن (some) نستخدم فى السؤال فى حالة العرض والطلب :

▶ - Would you like some tea ? (عرض)

- Can I have some water, please ? (طلب)

1. Help your child know the difference between countable and uncountable nouns.
- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف الفرق بين الأسماء المعدودة والغير معدودة

2. Help your child know how to use "some" and "any".
- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم "some" بمعنى "بعض" و "any" بمعنى "أى"

(_) (_)

B. any أي

Usage : We use "any" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in questions and negative sentences.

◄ نستخدم (any) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة في النفي والاستفهام.

any rice   any pens

A. Negative statements : • في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

- There aren't any vegetables in the fridge. (Countable noun)
- I don't have any coffee in the kitchen. (Uncountable noun)

B. Interrogative : • في صيغة الاستفهام :

- Do you have any tomatoes ? (Countable noun)
- Is there any salad in the dish ? (Uncountable noun)



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. There is .... water on the floor.
   a. some b. any c. a d. an
2. We want .... tea, please.
   a. some b. any c. a d. an
3. I went to the zoo yesterday and I saw .... elephant.
   a. a b. an c. some d. any
4. They didn't eat .... apples or oranges.
   a. an b. any c. a d. some
5. Would you like .... coffee ?
   a. some b. any c. an d. many
6. There aren't .... oranges in the kitchen.
   a. some b. a c. any d. an
7. I would like .... cheese, please.
   a. any b. some c. an d. a
8. There are .... books on the table.
   a. any b. some c. an d. a
9. My mother needs .... onion.
   a. some b. a c. an d. any

(__) (__)

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The food diaries from healthiest to unhealthiest

يوميات الطعام من الأكثر صحية إلى الأقل صحية

Meals

breakfast وجبة الإفطار | lunch وجبة الغداء | dinner وجبة العشاء





in the morning | in the afternoon | in the evening



Breakfast : ful medames and bread, boiled egg, fresh juice
فول مدمس وخبز، بيضة مسلوقة وعصير طازج
Lunch : koshari, salad, an orange — كشري، سلطة وبرتقالة
Dinner : yogurt, fruit salad — زبادي وسلطة فواكه



Breakfast : cheese and bread, cucumber, jam — جبن وخبز، خيار ومربى
Lunch : chicken, french fries, rice — دجاج، بطاطس مقلية وأرز
Dinner : yogurt, honey, cake — زبادي، عسل وكيك



Breakfast : 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese — ٢ بيضة مقلية، بطاطس مقلية وجبنة
Lunch : burger and french fries — برجر وبطاطس مقلية
Dinner : pizza — بيتزا

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار

Learn 1. We eat yogurt and .... salad for dinner.
a. fruit b. vegetables c. soup d. bread

Practice 2. We can eat koshari for ....
a. breakfast b. lunch c. dinner d. dessert

• Help your child read and identify the food diaries from healthiest to unhealthiest.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على يوميات الطعام من الأكثر صحة إلى الأقل صحة

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1. I like visiting my Grandma's house. ☐
2. My Grandma has an apple tree. ☐
3. We usually have fresh lemons and mangoes from her garden. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Would you like .... orange?
   a. a b. an c. some d. any
2. Are there .... books on the desk?
   a. any b. some c. an d. a
3. We can eat .... for dessert.
   a. rice b. chocolate c. onions d. tomatoes
4. We need some .... for salad.
   a. burgers b. nuts c. cucumbers d. jam

3 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

(A)	(B)
1. How about	☐ a. any milk.
2. Will you come	☐ b. unpack my bag.
3. We haven't got	☐ c. some carrots, please.
4. I would like	☐ d. buying some apples?
	☐ e. to the market with me?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. would - like - I - apples - some - ,please.

....

2. some - buying - about - lemons - , too - How?

....

3. like - you - What - would - lunch - for?

....

4. onions - the fridge - Are - any - there - in?

....

( ) ( )

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Laila. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six. I have my breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. My sister likes to have fried eggs and bread. My parents like to have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables and rice for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Laila's .... have ful medames for breakfast.
   a. friends b. brothers c. sisters d. parents
2. The underlined phrase "get up" means ....
   a. wake up b. climb c. play d. sleep

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Laila go in the afternoon ?

   ....

4. What does Laila have for breakfast ?

   ....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

can i have some grapes, please ?

....

7 Write an email of about FORTY (40) words about your balanced diet to your friend Hany. Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hany@gmail.com.

اكتب رسالة بريد إلكترونى مكونة من (٤٠) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What do you have for breakfast ?
- What healthy food do you have ?

New message ×

Secure | https:

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

.... ,

....

Lesson 3

▶ Jack and the beanstalk ▶ Pronunciation ▶ CLIL : Math



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا	giant	عملاق	castle	قلعة
poor	فقير	free	حُر	axe	فأس
rich	غني	golden egg	بيضة من الذهب	terrible	مزعج / فظيع
cage	قفص	floor	ارضية	magic	سحرى

Extra vocabulary

get a good price	يحصل على سعر جيد	cloud	سحابة	special	خاص / مميز
cow	بقرة	kind	عطوف	angry	غاضب
gold	ذهب	hen	دجاجة	hungry	جائع
beans	حبوب (الفاصوليا)	person	شخص	ground	أرض (يابسة)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed	throw	يرمى/يلقى	threw
count	يعد	counted	fall	يسقط	fell
cry	يصرخ	cried	run away	يهرب	ran away
chop	يقطع	chopped	meet	يقابل	met
grab	يجذب	grabbed			
reach	يصل	reached			
save	ينقذ	saved			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

stay with	يبقى مع	on the way to ...	فى الطريق إلى ...
at last	فى النهاية	throw out of ...	يرمى من ...
as soon as	بمجرد أن	go up to ...	يرتفع / يعلو إلى ...
ever after	منذ ذلك الحين	Thank you for ...	شكرًا لك على ...

لاحظ: أن كلمة (beans) تشير إلى البقوليات مثل الفول، الفاصوليا واللوبيا.

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
giant	a very, very big person شخص كبير (حجمًا) جدًا جدًا
grab	to pick something up quickly أن تلتقط شيء بسرعة
castle	a very large building built a long time ago مبنى كبير جدًا بُنِي منذ وقت طويل
chop	to cut something down أن تقطع شيء ما
cage	a box in which we keep animals صندوق نربي فيه الحيوانات

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Jack and the beanstalk	mother - poor	Jack and his mother were very poor.
	special beans	Jack bought special beans from an old man.
	throw - window	Jack's mother threw the beans out of the window.
	magic - golden	Jack saw a giant and a magic hen in the castle.
	chop - beanstalk	Jack chopped down the beanstalk to help the hen.
	fall - ground	The giant fell on the ground.
	buy - food	Jack sold the golden eggs to buy food.



Pop Quiz on Definitions

★ Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. To grab means
2. When we cut something down,
3. A giant is
4. A castle is a very large

(B)

( ) a. building built a long time ago.
( ) b. we chop it.
( ) c. to pick something up quickly.
( ) d. a very, very big person.
( ) e. we fell asleep.

• Help your child read the words and identify their definitions.
• Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الكلمات ويتعرف على تعريفاتها.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B)

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Jack and the Beanstalk
جاك وساق الفاصوليا



The beginning

Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

كان جاك ووالدته فقراء للغاية. قالت والدة جاك "اذهب إلى السوق وقم ببيع آخر بقرة لنا. من فضلك يا جاك، قم ببيعها بثمن جيد!"



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them ? They will make you rich!" said the man.

في الطريق إلى السوق، قابل جاك رجلًا عجوزًا. فقال الرجل له "أنا معي هذه الحبوب المميزة. هل تريد أن تشتريها ؟ ستجعلك غنى !"



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

اشترى جاك الحبوب. لكن كانت والدته غاضبة للغاية وقالت "نحن نحتاج إلى طعام يا جاك وليس حبوب!" والقتهم خارج الشرفة. فقال جاك "أسف يا والدتي، اعتقدت أنها ستساعدنا." وذهب جاك للفراش. وكان حزينًا وجائعًا جدًا.

The middle



The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

في الصباح التالي، رأى جاك ساق نبات فاصوليا طويل جدًا في الحديقة. لقد كانت مرتفعة إلى السحاب. فتسلق جاك ساق الفاصوليا. عند نهاية قمتها رأى قلعة. فدخل جاك ليرى ما إذا كان هناك أحد يحتاج للمساعدة.

Notes for parents

• Help your child look and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ النص

Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the floor. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen were some golden eggs.

فجأة رأى جاك عملاق كبير جدًا يعد حقائب من العملات الذهبية. وكان يوجد دجاجة على الأرض. كانت الدجاجة بداخل قفص. وبجانب الدجاجة كان هناك بعض البيض الذهبي.



The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please." cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!" "I'll help you!" said Jack.

كانت تبدو الدجاجة حزينة جدًا. لقد كانت دجاجة سحرية وكانت تستطيع التحدث! صرخت الدجاجة قائلة : "ساعدني من فضلك." "انقذني من هذا العملاق المزعج!" قال جاك "سوف اساعدك !"



The End

As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!

بمجرد أن وصل جاك إلى حديقته، التقط فأسه. قام بقطع ساق نبات الفاصوليا. فسقط العملاق على الأرض وهرب. كانت الدجاجة سعيدة! لقد تحررت في النهاية!



"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother ?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

قالت الدجاجة "شكرًا على مساعدتي يا جاك. أنت ولد عطوف جدًا. هل يمكنني من فضلك أن أبقى معك أنت ووالدتك؟" لم يعد جاك ووالدته فقراء. باع جاك ووالدته البيض الذهبي ليشتروا طعام. عاش جاك ووالدته سعداء منذ ذلك الحين.



Make logical inferences.
قم بعمل استنتاجات منطقية

Learn 1. Why was the hen sad ?
- Because it was in a cage.

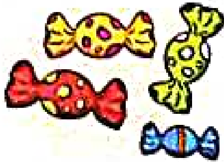
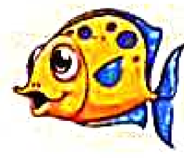
Practice 2. Why do you think Jack is a good boy ?
....

(_) (_)

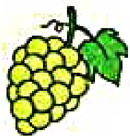
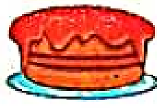
III Phonics

Vowel Sounds a e i o u

• Short vowels

• The letter [a] makes the sound /æ/.		• The letter [i] makes the sound /ɪ/.	
 candy حلوى	 mango مانجو	 milk لبن	 fish سمك

• Long vowels

• The letters [a-e] make the sound /eɪ/.			• The letters [i-e] make the sound /aɪ/.	
 grapes عنب	 cake كعكة/تورتة	 bake يخبز	 lime ليمون حامض	 rice أرز

• The letters [ay] make the sound /eɪ/.		• The letters [ea] make the sound /i:/.	
 play يلعب	 say يقول	 bean فول	 meat لحمة

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

▶ There are some words sound the same but have different spellings.

يوجد كلمات لها نفس النطق الصوتي ولكن لها هجاء مختلف.

ai → /eɪ/		ay → /eɪ/		a - e → /eɪ/	
snail قوقعة	tail ذيل	play يلعب	stay يبقى / يمكث	snake ثعبان	cake كيك

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and repeat the words to distinguish between the short and long vowels.
- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويردد الكلمات ليميز بين الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة.
- Help your child to read and learn that some words have the same sound but have different spellings.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم أن بعض الكلمات لها نفس الصوت ولكن لديها هجاء مختلف.



Pop Quiz on Phonics

1 Read and circle the odd sound. اقرأ و ضع دائرة حول الصوت المختلف.

1. grapes – bread – snake
2. rice – milk – lime
3. meet – candy – mango
4. snail – rain – bean

2 Read and complete. اقرأ و اكمل.

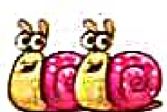
1. I say, "Let's pl _ _"!



2. Let's bake a c _ k _.



3. Sn _ _ ls have tails.



4. I like to eat b _ _ ns and _ ggs.



3 Look and write the words. انظر و اكتب الكلمات.

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

4 Match the words that have the same sound. صل الكلمات التي لها نفس الصوت.

(A)	(B)
1. mango	☐ a. bean
2. meat	☐ b. lime
3. fish	☐ c. candy
4. rice	☐ d. milk

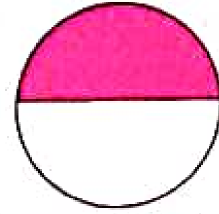
(__) (__)

IV Math

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Decimal fraction : الكسر العشرى





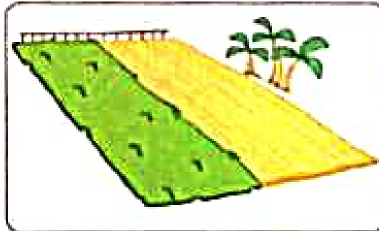
A fraction consists of two parts.
الكسر يتكون من جزئين

1 ←	Numerator	البسط
2 ←	Denominator	المقام

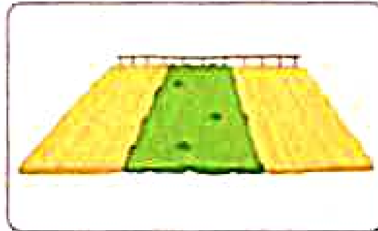
▸ In decimal fraction, the numerator is divided by the denominator.
في الكسور العشرية، تتم قسمة البسط على المقام

$\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$ $\frac{2}{5} = 2 \div 5 = 0.4$

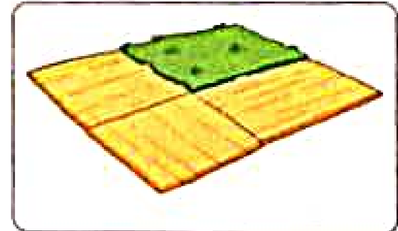
Did you now ? 0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400



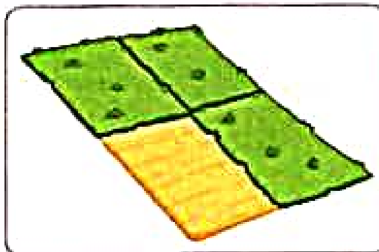
$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$



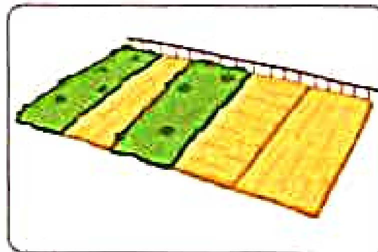
$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$



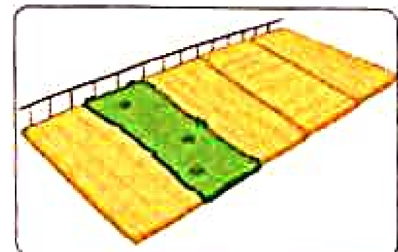
$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$



$\frac{3}{4} = 0.75$



$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$



$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$

Notes for parents

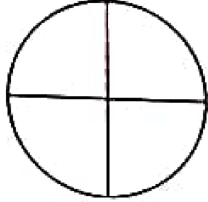
- Help your child to read and learn about fractions.
- The numerator tells how many parts are being identified.
- The denominator tells the total number.
- Help your child learn how to convert fractions to decimals.

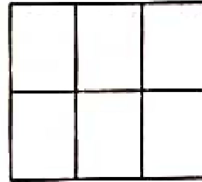
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الكسور
- البسط يذكر كم عدد الأجزاء المحدودة
- المقام يذكر العدد الكلي
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يحول الكسور إلى أعداد عشرية

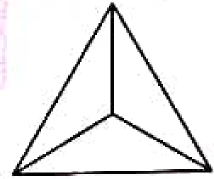


Pop Quiz on Math

1 Color to show the fraction. لون لإظهار الكسر.

1. $\frac{2}{4}$ 

2. $\frac{5}{6}$ 

3. $\frac{2}{3}$ 

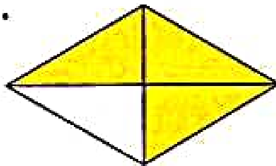
2 Write each of the following fractions using a decimal point.

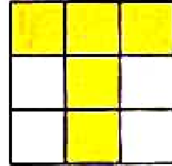
اكتب الكسور الآتية مستخدمًا العلامة العشرية.

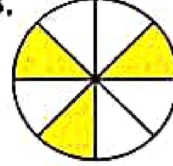
1. $\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$
2. $\frac{3}{4}$ = ... = ...
3. $\frac{1}{4}$ = ... = ...
4. $\frac{1}{5}$ = ... = ...
5. $\frac{2}{5}$ = ... = ...
6. $\frac{1}{2}$ = ... = ...

3 Write the fraction for the shaded part of the shape.

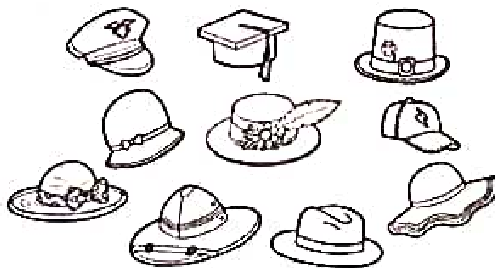
اكتب الكسر للجزء المظلل من الشكل.

1. 

2. 

3. 

4 Color to show the fraction. لون لإظهار الكسر.

1. 

$\frac{3}{10}$ of the hats are red.

2. 

$\frac{5}{8}$ of the umbrellas are green.

(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1. Jack went to sell his dog in the market. ☐
2. Jack met an old woman. ☐
3. Jack bought the beans at last. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Jack saw the beanstalk in the ....
2. Jack climbed the ....
3. Jack went inside the ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. When we pick something up quickly, we .... it.
   a. chop   b. cut   c. grab   d. count
2. There are .... golden eggs with the giant.
   a. some   b. any   c. a   d. an
3. I would like to buy .... food.
   a. any   b. an   c. some   d. a
4. We buy and sell things at the ....
   a. market   b. zoo   c. school   d. library

4 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود [A] بالعمود [B].

(A)	(B)
1. Jack and his mother	☐ a. the vegetables.
2. He is very big.	☐ b. at the market.
3. They sold the cow	☐ c. were very poor.
4. We need to chop	☐ d. He is a giant.
	☐ e. walks slowly.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!" On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to

( ) ( )

buy them ? They will make you rich!" said the man. Jack bought the beans but his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about ....
   a. the cow b. the park
   c. Jack and his mother d. Jack and his school
2. Jack and his mother wanted to sell their ....
   a. hen b. goat c. cow d. beans

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Jack buy from the old man ?
   ....
4. Why was Jack's mother angry ?
   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. castle – a – saw - He .
   ....
2. very – terrible – The – giant – was.
   ....
3. tall – I – tree – saw – a.
   ....
4. on – was – a hen – There – floor – the.
   ....

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

thank you for helping me, jack.

....

Lessons 4 & 5

- Writing
- Project

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

ingredients	مكونات	basbousa	بسبوسة
oven	فرن	semolina	دقيق سميد
molokhia	ملوخية	syrup	شراب
recipe	وصفة طهي	lentil soup	شوربة عدس

Extra vocabulary

diamond	ماسة	saucepan	قدر / إناء صغير	cocktail juice	عصير كوكتيل
sugar	سكر	dish	طبق	baking powder	خميرة الخبز
mixture	خليط	butter	زبدة	almonds	لوز
knife	سكين	shape	شكل	melted	مذاب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
bake	يخبز	baked	make	يصنع	made
mix	يخلط	mixed	put	يضع	put
pour	يسكب / يصب	poured	take	يأخذ	took
boil	يغلي	boiled	cut	يقطع	cut
share	يشارك	shared	find	يجد	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

weigh out	يزن	take ... out	يُخرج
for about 10 minutes	لمدة حوالي ١٠ دقائق	by hand	باليد / يدويًا
turn ... on	يُشغل ...	looks really pretty	تبدو جميلة للغاية

Abbreviations اختصارات

- tsp ► teaspoon (small spoon) ملعقة شاي (ملعقة صغيرة)
- tbsp ► tablespoon (large spoon) ملعقة كبيرة

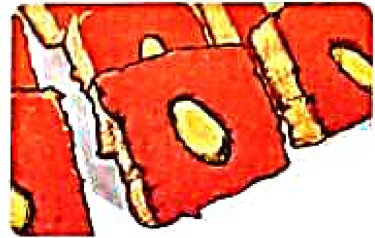
(_) (_)

What is the recipe for ?

Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

My favorite recipe
وصفتي المفضلة



We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and **molokhia**[1]. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

First, you need to turn your **oven**[2] on to get it hot. Then **weigh out**[3] the **ingredients**[4]. Then you **mix**[5] the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this ! Then you add the yogurt and **pour**[6] the **mixture**[7] into a baking dish.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty.

Bake[8] the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. **Boil**[9] the mixture for about 10 minutes.

Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. **Cut**[10] the basbousa and share it with your family!

Ingredients	
2 cups semolina	٢ كوب سميد
1 cup yogurt	١ كوب زبادي
$\frac{1}{3}$ cup sugar	$\frac{1}{3}$ كوب سكر
$\frac{1}{2}$ cup melted butter	$\frac{1}{2}$ كوب زبدة مذابة
1 tsp baking powder	١ ملعقة صغيرة مسحوق خبز
1 cup coconut	١ كوب جوز هند
almonds	لوز
syrup	شراب مركز
$\frac{3}{4}$ cup water	$\frac{3}{4}$ كوب مياه
2 tbsp honey	٢ ملعقة كبيرة عسل

[1] ملوخية
[2] فرن
[3] يزن
[4] مكونات
[5] يخلط
[6] يسكب
[7] خليط
[8] يخبز
[9] يغلي
[10] يقطع

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. How should we mix the ingredients of basbousa ?
– By hand

Practice 2. How can we make the syrup ?

Note :
لاحظ : عند إعطاء تعليمات عن وصفة طهي نستخدم صيغة الأمر (مصدر الفعل في بداية الجملة (inf.):
1. Bake the basbousa in the oven. • Cut the cake.
- استخدم الكلمات التي تعبر عن التسلسل حتى ترتب الخطوات
2. First, then, after that ...... etc.

- يقوم بطهي الكثير من الأشياء المختلفة مثل شوربة العدس والفول المدمس والملوخية الشيء الذي أفضل طهيه هو البسبوسة. هذه هي طريقة صناعتها (البسبوسة)
أولاً تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن لتسخينه ثم قم بوزن المكونات ثم تخلط السميد مع جوز الهند والسكر والزبدة المذابة يجب عليك خلط هذه المكونات باليد أنا أحب فعل هذا! ثم تضيف الزبادي
وتسكب المزيج في طبق للخبز يمكنك استخدام السكين لعمل أشكال ماسية فوق البسبوسة ضع حبة لوز على كل ماسة تبدو جميلة للغاية. أخبز البسبوسة في الفرن لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة اصنع
الشراب المحلى ضع العسل والماء وعصير الليمون في قدر اغلي المزيج لمدة ١٠ دقائق اخرج البسبوسة من الفرن ثم اسكب الشراب المحلى عليها قطع البسبوسة وشاركها مع عائلتك!

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).
استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1. We put honey, water and lemon juice into a saucepan. ☐
2. We boil the mixture for about 10 minutes. ☐
3. We pour the syrup over the cheese. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... all the ingredients in a big bowl by hand.
   a. Tidy b. Mix c. Read d. Write
2. We use a .... to make diamond shapes on the top of the basbousa.
   a. knife b. cup c. saucepan d. spoon
3. We haven't got .... mango trees in our garden.
   a. some b. an c. any d. a
4. .... the basbousa with your family.
   a. Share b. Shares c. Sharing d. Shared

3 Read and match (A) with (B).
اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

(A)	(B)
1. My sister cooked	☐ a. to make a cake.
2. I bought the ingredients	☐ b. a big saucepan.
3. I put the syrup into	☐ c. lentil soup yesterday.
4. You need to	☐ d. in the oven.
	☐ e. turn your oven on before baking.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and molokhia. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this ! Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. The underlined word "**pretty**" means ....
   a. lazy b. bad c. beautiful d. angry

2. This text is about ....
   a. plants we grow b. how to bake basbousa
   c. our school trip d. how to study hard

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What are the ingredients of basbousa ?

....

4. What things can we cook ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. can – delicious – juice – We – mango – make.

....

2. mix – the – You – by hand – should – ingredients.

....

3. almonds – Put – on – basbousa – top of – the.

....

4. cook – She – molokhia – likes – to.

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

what dishes can you make with apples

....

7 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب موضوع إنشائي مكون من حوالي (٤٠) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Your favorite recipe مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• mix • oven

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Mangoes grow in Egypt. My uncle grows mangoes on his farm. We also have a mango tree in front of our house. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We can make delicious mango juice or cocktail juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake. Mango is delicious and healthy.



1. The text is about " .... ".
   Or : The main/general idea of the text is about " .... ".
   Or : The text talks about " .... ".
   Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
   a. Basbousa b. Mangoes c. Honey d. Oranges
2. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   - Mango is very useful for us.

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

This is how you make basbousa. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

1. The text is about " .... ".
   Or : The main/general idea of the text is about " .... ".
   Or : The text talks about " .... ".
   Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
   a. Koshari b. Chocolate
   c. Ice cream d. Basbousa
2. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   ....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (وصفتى المفضلة) و (الطعام الصحى وغير الصحى) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
My favorite recipe	Write the meaning : فرن .... مقادير .... يخبز .... يصب .... شراب .... يشارك	Complete the sentences : 1. We weigh out the .... 2. I .... the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes. 3. Pour the .... over the basbousa. 4. I turn the .... on to get it hot.	Write a paragraph using the sentences : "My favorite recipe" ....
Healthy and unhealthy food	صحى .... غير صحى .... مانجو .... طازج .... سوق .... دجاج	1. I love chocolate, too. But it isn't .... 2. We have a .... tree in the garden. 3. My uncle collects .... eggs every day. 4. Chocolate is .... if you eat it a lot.	"Healthy and unhealthy food" ....

(_) (_)

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٨ جملة].

1 My favorite food

I love chocolate[1]. Chocolate isn't healthy if we eat it a lot[2]. I also like chicken and fish[3]. They are healthy food[4]. My mother buys them at the market[5].

2 My favorite recipe

We cook lots of things[6]. My favorite thing is koshari[7]. I buy the ingredients at the market[8]. I use lentils and rice to make it[9]. It is a very delicious dish[10]. It is not easy to cook it[11]. My mom helps me make it[12].

3 Mangoes

Mangoes grow in Egypt[13]. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with them[14]. We can make delicious mango juice[15]. I usually use mangoes to make fruit salad[16]. My sister likes mango cakes[17]. Mango is healthy[18]. My uncle has a mango tree in his garden[19].

4 How to make basbousa

To : ali@gmail.com
From : hoda@gamil.com
Subject: How to make basbousa
Dear Ali,

How are you?[20] I'm happy to write this email to you[21]. I like basbousa [22]. Yesterday, I made a nice basbousa[23]. I mixed the semonlina, coconut, sugar and butter together[24]. I poured the mixture into a baking dish and baked it[25]. I used a knife to make diamond shapes on the top[26]. Then I poured the syrup over it and shared it with my family[27]. It was very delicious[28].

Yours,
Hoda

TEST YOUR SKILLS



We plant our food



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the following dialog with the words in the box.

healthy - chocolate - favorite - chicken - market

Enas : What's your (1) .... food, Donia ?

Donia : It's (2) .... But it's unhealthy.

Enas : Do you like (3) .... food ?

Donia : Yes, I like (4) ...., fish and mango.

Enas : Do you have any mango trees in your garden ?

Donia : Yes, I do.

My Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets.

1. Have we got .... (some) burgers ?
2. We have got .... (any) vegetables.
3. This is .... (an) beautiful plant.

My Writing

3 Write a blog of about (30-40) words about "Your favorite food"

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

My Project

4 Make a poster about a fruit or vegetable, that grows in Egypt.

 قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

(__) (__)

Review on Unit 1



مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

beans	فول
eggs	بيض
carrots	جزر
chocolate	شيكولاتة
coconuts	جوز الهند
lemons	ليمون (أصفر)
limes	ليمون حامض (أخضر)
onions	بصل
pineapples	ثمرة الأناناس
yogurt	زبادى
basbousa	بسبوسة
french fries	بطاطس مقلية
shopping list	قائمة التسوق
honey	عسل
knife	سكين

Phonics

- Short vowels

  candy – mango - milk – fish

- Long vowels

  cake – lime - play – bean

- Some words have the same sound /eI/

  rain – play

Language

Countable and uncountable nouns

1 a - an

◂ تستخدم (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يُعد.

- a mango - an apple

2 some - any

◂ تستخدم (any / some) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة و الاسماء غير المعدودة.

- some juice - any rice

◂ تستخدم (some) فى الإثبات وحالة العرض والطلب.

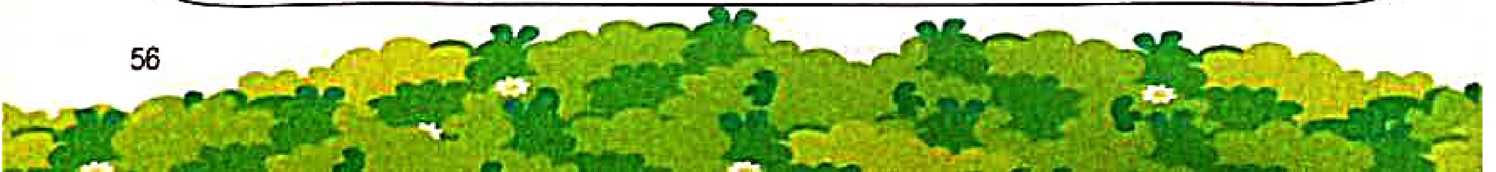
▸ - I have some oranges.

- Would you like some ice cream ?

◂ تستخدم (any) فى حالة النفى والاستفهام.

▸ - I don't have any water.

- Do you have any sugar ?



Test 1 on Unit 1

• نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ.

1. That's the recipe to make rice. ☐
2. We put honey, water and lemon juice into a saucepan. ☐
3. Boil the mixture for one hour. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Sara and Rania will go to the ....
2. Rania and Sara will go to the market next ....
3. Rania wants to buy some .... and tomatoes.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... is a very big person.
   a. giant b. small c. poor d. rich
2. We can keep animals and birds in a ....
   a. bowl b. school c. cage d. cupboard
3. Salma doesn't have .... pens.
   a. some b. any c. a d. an
4. How about .... some tomatoes ?
   a. buy b. to buy c. buying d. buys

4 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Are there	☐ a. I don't eat a lot.
2. Can you help me bake	☐ b. the cookies ?
3. Chocolate is unhealthy so,	☐ c. to your house.
4. I'll put the fruit	☐ d. any oranges ?
	☐ e. in the fruit bowl.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In Egypt, farmers grow many kinds of food. There are vegetables and fruit. I like carrots, potatoes and onions. There are also many kinds of fruit such as mangoes, bananas and pineapples. Fruit and vegetables are healthy.

My grandpa has a farm. He grows rice, tomatoes and lemons. I always help him when we have a holiday. My grandfather raises chickens, too. I like to feed them. My mum makes us delicious recipes from vegetables and fruits.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun them refers to the ....
   a. vegetables b. chickens c. bananas d. food

2. Fruits and vegetables are ....
   a. healthy b. unhealthy c. expensive d. terrible

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What food does grandpa grow ?

....

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. like – would – Younis – lunch – for – meat.

....

2. There – tomatoes – aren't – any – the fridge – in.

....

3. would – you – What – like ?

....

4. Why – important – fruits – is – to eat – it ?

....

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

there are some apples, tarek.

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب موضوع إنشائي مكون من حوالي (٤٠) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Healthy and unhealthy food مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What's your favorite healthy food ?
- Why is chocolate unhealthy ?

....
....
....
....

Test 2 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب صح أو خطأ. (المنيا / ملوى ٢٠٢٣)

1. The big giant was counting bags of potatoes. ☐
2. There was a hen on the floor. ☐
3. Next to the hen were some silver coins. ☐

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل. (الجيزة / الدقى ٢٠٢٣)

1. Mona asks Hala about her favorite ....
2. Hala's favorite food is ....
3. Hala eats fish .... times a week.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There aren't .... apples.
   a. a b. an c. any d. some
2. Would you like .... orange juice ?
   a. some b. any c. a d. an
3. To .... something means to cut it down.
   a. grab b. meet c. reach d. chop
4. We use a .... to cut vegetables.
   a. spoon b. cage c. knife d. glass

4 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

(A)		(B)
1. A giant is a very, very	(الجيزة / الحوامدية ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. basbousa.
2. I love baking	(الجيزة / ٦ أكتوبر ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. any cookies ?
3. What about	(كفر الشيخ / البرلس ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. big person.
4. Are there	(الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. buying some oranges ?
		☐ e. feels happy.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about Omar's ....

a. school b. favorite food c. village d. job

2. Lemon is a kind of ....

a. candy b. fruits c. vegetables d. nuts

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do farmers raise ?

....

4. What does Omar's mom make ? [البحيرة / المحمودية ٢٠٢٣]

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. favorite – is – healthy – What – food – your ? [بني سويف ٢٠٢٣]

....

2. didn't – any – Nadia – buy – apples. [أسوان ٢٠٢٣]

....

3. carrots, – like – would – I – some – please . [الشرقية / فاقوس ٢٠٢٣]

....

4. have – mango – you – trees – Do – any ? [بني سويف / الفشن ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

would you like an orange [سوهاج / جرجا ٢٠٢٣]

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب موضوع إنشائي مكون من حوالي [٤٠] كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية الآتية.

Your favorite fruit مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- Why do you like manago ?
- What can you do with manago ? [الدقهلية - دكرنس ٢٠٢٣]

....

....

....

(__) (__)



STOP HERE !

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع واختر.

1. Chocolate is .... if we eat it a lot. (unhealthy – healthy – good)
2. My mother buys potatoes at the .... (hospital – school – market)

B. Language Functions

▶ **Read and complete the dialogue.** اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة.

some – about – would

Market seller : Hello, what (1).................... you like ?

Mom : I would like (2).................... carrots, please.

Market seller : Would you like an orange ?

Mom : Yes, of course.

Market seller : How (3).................... some lemons ?

Mom : No, thank you.

C. Vocabulary and structures

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We.......................... mangoes in our garden.
   a. bake b. grow c. boil
2. .... means to cut something down.
   a. Chop b. Bake c. Pour
3. Are there .... tomatoes in the fridge ?
   a. much b. any c. an
4. I'm hungry. Let's make.......................... sandwiches.
   a. some b. any c. an
5. How about .... some oranges ?
   a. buy b. buying c. buys





Unit 2

I want to be healthy !

أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة !

Aims of Unit Two : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about sports.

  - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الألعاب الرياضية.
- talk about sports I'm good or bad at.

  - أتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية التي أجيدها والتي لا أجيدها.
- read and listen to a science fiction story.

  - أقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة خيال علمي.
- learn how to say single-syllable words.

  - أتعلم كيف أنطق كلمات ذات مقطع لفظي واحد.
- write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson.

  - أكتب سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية رياضية مصرية مشهورة.
- give a presentation about how to help my local environment.

  - أقدم عرض تقديمي حول كيفية مساعدة بيئتي المحلية.

(_) (_)

Lesson 1

Part 1

▶ Listening and Reading : Sports



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


football
كرة القدم


handball
كرة يد


squash
لعبة الإسكواش


tennis
رياضة التنس


swimming
رياضة السباحة


sailing
إبحار


karate
رياضة الكاراتية


kung fu
رياضة الكونج فو

Extra vocabulary

match	مباراة	later	لاحقًا	game	لعبة
bubble	فقاعة	sports	رياضات	club	نادى
better	أفضل	good	جيد	awesome	رائع / مذهش
worse	أسوأ	great	عظيم / رائع	popular	شعبي - محبوب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
agree	يوافق	agreed	win	يفوز	won
try	يحاول - يجرب	tried	go	يذهب	went
			know	يعرف	knew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

good at (inf. + ing)/(noun)	جيد في	Me, too!	أنا أيضًا!
bad at (inf. + ing)/(noun)	سيء في	looks fun	يبدو ممتعًا
		So do I !	وأنا كذلك!

Did you know ? هل تعلم؟

There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!

هناك الكثير من الرياضات غير العادية التي يمكنك تجربتها. إنها ممتعة، وتحافظ على صحتك!

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Sports	sports	Seleem and Wael are talking about sports.
	squash match	Wael is watching a squash match.
	tennis	Wael is good at playing tennis.
	playing	Seleem is good at playing squash.
	karate - TV	Seleem loves watching karate and kung fu on TV.
	swimming - sailing	Wael's favorite sports are swimming and sailing.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

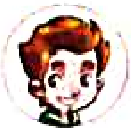
▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I play football with my friends at the ....
   a. hospital b. club c. bank d. museum
2. My favorite .... are handball and squash.
   a. subjects b. foods c. sports d. desserts
3. Football is very .... in Egypt.
   a. popular b. bad c. hot d. cold
4. My brother was happy because his team .... the match.
   a. tried b. won c. went d. watched

II Listening and Reading

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Seleem and Wael are talking about sports.
يتحدث سليم ووائل عن الألعاب الرياضية.



What are you watching? ماذا تشاهد؟





An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini - it's great. I love squash!
مباراة قديمة بين رنيم الوليلي ونور الشربيني - إنها رائعة. أنا أحب الإسكواش!



Me too! Who's winning? أنا أيضًا! من سيفوز؟

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة
- Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly. - ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة

(_) (_)



Raneem - she's very good at playing squash.
رنيم - هى جيدة جدًا فى لعب الإسكواش.



I know. What sport are you good at? أنا أعرف. ما هى الرياضة التى تجيدها؟



I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball.
What about you? أنا جيد جدًا فى لعب التنس، لكنى سيئ فى لعب كرة اليد. وماذا عنك؟



I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too. أنا جيد فى لعب الإسكواش، لكنى سيئ فى لعب التنس. أنا أحب كرة القدم أيضًا.



So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.
وأنا كذلك، لكنى أفضل فى لعبة التنس عن كرة القدم. دعنا نذهب ونلعب مباراة كرة قدم.



Yes, let's go to the club later. نعم، دعنا نذهب إلى النادى لاحقًا.



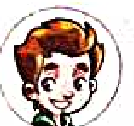
Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?
نعم! وما هى الرياضات الأخرى التى تشاهدها على التليفزيون؟



I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?
أحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونج فو. وأنت؟



My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!
الرياضات المفضلة بالنسبة لى هى السباحة والإبحار. يبدو الإبحار ممتعًا!



Great! So what time do you want to play football?
عظيم! إذن ما هو الوقت الذى تريد أن تلعب فيه كرة القدم؟



About five? فى حوالى الساعة الخامسة؟



Awesome - see you in the club later! رائع - أراك لاحقًا فى النادى!

III Language functions

To talk about sports للتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية



What sports do we have in Egypt?
ما هي الرياضات التي لدينا في مصر؟



We have sports like football, tennis, and swimming.
لدينا رياضات مثل كرة القدم، التنس والسباحة.





Which sports would you like to try?
ما الرياضة التي ترغبين في تجربتها؟





I would like to try squash.
أريد أن أجرب لعبة الإسكواش.



What's the most popular sport in Egypt?
ما هي أكثر الرياضات شعبية في مصر؟



I think football is the most popular.
أعتقد كرة القدم الأكثر شعبية.



IV Language focus

Remember : Comparative adjectives : تذكر : صفات المقارنة :

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة عند المقارنة بين اثنين من الأشياء، الأشخاص أو الأماكن.

Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة	
Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة
الصفة + er + than - Nour is taller than Rokaya.	more / less + الصفة + than - Math is more difficult than English.

- هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective	Comparative مقارنة بين اثنين
good	better than
bad	worse than

- I'm better at tennis than I am at football.

(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lesson 1 Part 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. Ahmed is good at ....
2. Ahmed usually plays football at the ....
3. Omar likes watching .... on TV.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. He is .... at tennis than he is at squash.
   a. good b. best c. better d. bad
2. We have .... like football and tennis in Egypt.
   a. foods b. sports c. places d. fruits
3. Sara is better .... Noha at math.
   a. the b. then c. than d. they
4. My favorite sport is swimming. It .... fun !
   a. watches b. looks c. agrees d. wins

3 Read and match [A] with [B].

[A]	[B]
1. What sports do we	☐ a. a squash match on TV.
2. We are playing handball	☐ b. at the club.
3. I'm good at	☐ c. have in Egypt ?
4. He is watching	☐ d. swimming.
	☐ e. looks delicious.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. to – club – the – go – Let's – later.

....

2. try – I – like – sports – new – to.

....

3. sports – like – you – would – Which – to watch ?

....

4. is – the most – What – in Egypt – sport – popular ?

....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sara is my little sister. She is eleven years old. She likes sports a lot. Her favorite sport is squash. She plays it at the club with her friends. She practices squash twice a week. She won many prizes. She wants to be a famous player. My parents help her practice well. She is very clever and active.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Sara plays squash at the ....
   a. park   b. club   c. zoo   d. garden
2. She wants to be a famous ....
   a. doctor   b. teacher   c. engineer   d. player

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How old is Sara ?

....

4. What is Sara's favorite sport ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

Let s play squash

....

7 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Sports in Egypt

Guiding elements :

- popular
- swimming

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 1 Part 2

▶ An awful nightmare!



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

toxic سام	emissions انبعاثات	nightmare كابوس
lungs رئتين	dangerous خطر	breathing problems مشاكل تنفسية
planet كوكب	greenhouse صوبة زجاجية	dream حلم

Extra vocabulary

grass حشائش	dirty غير نظيف	horrible مخيف
sky سماء	gray لون رمادى	pollution تلوث
hospital مستشفى	beach شاطئ	shade ظل
awful فظيع / مزعج	plastic بلاستيك	sitting الجلوس
factory مصنع	clean نظيف	heart قلب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
stop يقف	stopped	know يعرف	knew
breathe يتنفس	breathed	drive يقود	drove
plant يزرع	planted		

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- need to يحتاج إلى
- stay at يبقى في
- because of بسبب
- any more لم يعد
- look after يعتني بـ
- keep ... clean يبقى ... نظيفًا
- work hard يعمل بجد
- get ready for يستعد لـ ...

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
toxic	very bad to eat or breathe سيء جدًا للأكل أو التنفس
breathe	to move air into and out of your lungs أن تنقل الهواء من و إلى رئتيك
emissions	gases from cars or factories غازات تنتج عن السيارات أو المصانع
shade	out of the sun بعيدًا عن الشمس
nightmare	a bad dream حلم سيء
greenhouse	a glass building used for growing plants مبنى زجاجي يستخدم من أجل زراعة النباتات



Pop Quiz on Definitions ▶ Read and match [A] with [B].

[A]

1. When you have a bad dream,
2. Emissions are
3. A greenhouse is
4. When you are in the shade,

[B]

☐ a. a glass building used for growing plants.
☐ b. you are out of the sun.
☐ c. it's a nightmare.
☐ d. gases from cars or factories.
☐ e. clean air.

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

⭐ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and toxic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to hospital because of problems with his breathing.



لا أستطيع التنفس، أنا أعرف ذلك. الهواء أسود و سام. يوجد العديد من الانبعاثات الناتجة عن السيارات. أنها خطيرة على رئة الأطفال ومن ثم نضطر إلى البقاء في المنزل. لم نستطع الذهاب إلى المدرسة في العديد من الأيام لأن الهواء سيء للغاية. فأخي الصغير اضطر إلى الذهاب للمستشفى بسبب مشاكل في التنفس.

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify the given definitions.
- Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
- Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات المعطاة له
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends - the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty.



أتذكر عندما كنا نستطيع الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائنا كانت الحشائش خضراء والسماء زرقاء اللون. حتى أننا كنا نستطيع رؤية الشمس. الآن لم يعد يمكننا حتى رؤية الشمس لأن السماء رمادية اللون أو سوداء. أتذكر الذهاب في العطلة واللعب على الشاطئ مع عائلتي. كنا نسبح في البحر، لكن الآن لا يمكننا السباحة في البحر لأنه يوجد به الكثير من البلاستيك مما يجعله غير نظيف.

Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from greenhouses and we can't sit outside any more. But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun.



من الأشياء الأخرى التي أتذكرها هي أننا كنا نأكل الفاكهة من الأشجار والجلوس في ظلها في الأيام الحارة. لكن الآن لقد قاموا بقطع كل الأشجار لذلك نحن نحصل على الفاكهة فقط من الصوبات الزجاجية ولم نعد نستطيع الجلوس بالخارج. لكن انتظر، ما هذا؟ إنها والدتي تنادي: لقد حان الوقت لأستعد للمدرسة! وكان كل هذا كابوس مزعج! فنظرت للخارج والسماء زرقاء وأستطيع أن أرى الشمس.

We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!



سنذهب إلى الحديقة اليوم. لكنني أتذكر حلمي وأعرف من داخلي إننا نحتاج إلى أن نعتني بكوكبنا. يمكننا أن نقلل من قيادة سياراتنا، ونستخدم الدراجات الخاصة بنا أكثر، نزرع الأشجار، ونحافظ على نظافة البحر. ولكن يجب علينا أن نعمل بجد على ذلك!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. How was the sky in the nightmare?
- It was gray or black.

Practice 2. How can we look after our planet?

General Exercises on Lesson 1 Part 2

1 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. When something is toxic,	☐ a. a very bad dream.
2. Emissions are	☐ b. to move air into and out of your lungs.
3. To breathe is	☐ c. very healthy.
4. The nightmare is	☐ d. gases that come from cars and factories.
	☐ e. it's very bad to eat or breathe.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. planet – look – our – We – after – need – to.

....

2. stops – from going – Bad air – to schools – children.

....

3. black – My sister – horrible, – dreams – about – air.

....

4. problems – Sara – breathing – has – her – with.

....

3 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

What can we do to protect our air?

Guiding elements :

• protect • planet

....

....

....

....

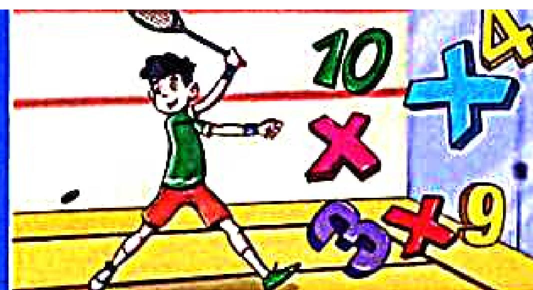
....

....

(_) (_)

Lesson 2

▶ Language focus
▶ CLIL : Math



I Vocabulary

Vocabulary

taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو	team	فريق
table tennis	تنس الطاولة	chess	شطرنج
drawing	الرسم	handball	كرة يد
poem	قصيدة	French	اللغة الفرنسية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed	speak	يتحدث	spoke
jump	يقفز	jumped	write	يكتب	wrote
tidy	ينظم	tidied	make	يصنع	made
practice	يتدرب	practiced	draw	يرسم	drew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

across the desert	عبر الصحراء	on your own	بمفردك / بنفسك
do jigsaws	يكون لعبة الصور المتقطعة	do math	يحل مسائل رياضية
do karate	يمارس لعبة الكاراتيه		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

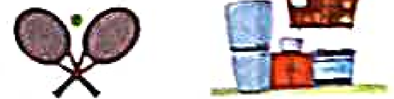
1. Monkeys can .... trees easily.
   a. jump b. climb c. tidy d. make
2. Camels live in the ....
   a. sky b. sea c. desert d. greenhouse
3. .... is my favorite sport.
   a. Arabic b. Taekwondo c. Kitchen d. Math
4. English and .... are my favorite languages.
   a. jigsaws b. chess c. drawing d. French
5. I like .... pictures of animals.
   a. eating b. drawing c. drinking d. speaking

II Listening and Reading

Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball.



Aser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis but he's bad at helping me in the kitchen!



My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She is bad at tidying her room!



III Language focus

Talking about things we do or don't do well.

التحدث عن أشياء نفعلها أو لا نفعلها بطريقة جيدة.

great at رائـع في
good at جيـد في → inf. + ing / noun
bad at سيئ في

- Huda is good at playing tennis.
- I am good at tennis, but I am bad at doing jigsaws.
- My brother is great at swimming, but he's bad at basketball.

Notice : • ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل :

◂ عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبلة حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

write → writing   practice → practicing   see → seeing

◂ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

swim → swimming   sit → sitting

Notes for parents

• Help your child know how to use (good at, bad at and great at).

• ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم "good at" ، "bad at" و "great at".

- مرحبًا، أنا داليا أنا جيدة في لعب كرة القدم وصناعة الكيك. أنا سيئة في لعب كرة اليد
- آسر هو أخي إنه جيد في لعبة التنس ولكنه سيئ في مساعدتي في المطبخ
- أختي اسمها سلمى هي جيدة في حل مسائل الرياضيات وهي سيئة في ترتيب حجرتها

(_) (_)

IV Language functions

To talk about favorite sports. للتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة.



1. A : Which are your favorite sports to do on your own ?
١. أي الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة لك التي تحب أن تؤديها بنفسك؟
B : I like playing squash on my own.



2. A : Which are your favorite sports to do with others or in a team ?
٢. أي الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة لك التي تحب أن تؤديها مع الآخرين أو في فريق؟
B : I like playing football in a team.



3. A : Which are your favorite sports to watch on TV ?
٣. أي الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة لك التي تحب أن تشاهدها على التلفاز؟
B : Swimming is my favorite sport to watch on TV.



Pop Quiz on Language

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. They can't paint the living room. They're really bad at ....
   a. painting b. paint c. painted d. to paint
2. My friend is great at .... handball.
   a. plays b. play c. playing d. played
3. My sister is good .... art.
   a. in b. to c. at d. of
4. Camels are .... at walking across the desert.
   a. better b. good c. best d. worse
5. .... are your favorite sports ?
   a. Who b. Which c. Why d. When
6. Noha is great at ....
   a. squash b. play squash c. plays squash d. played
7. My uncle .... good at sailing.
   a. do b. does c. is d. are
8. A : .... is your favorite sport to do in a team ? - B : Football.
   a. Where b. Which c. Who d. When

(__) (__)



Math

Adding and subtracting decimals.

جمع وطرح الأعداد العشرية.

Follow the following steps to (add or subtract) decimal numbers :

اتبع الخطوات التالية لتقوم بجمع / طرح الأرقام العشرية.

١. تعامل مع الأرقام العشرية مثل الأعداد الصحيحة.

٢. ضع الأرقام متتالية بحيث تكون العلامة العشرية لكل منها في نفس المكان.

٣. ضع أصفار إذا كان هناك احتياج ليصير الرقمين بنفس العدد.

٤. اجمع أو اطرح بداية من اليمين إلى اليسار.

For Example :

3.13 + 5.49
```
   3 . 1 3
 + 5 . 4 9
   8 . 6 2
```

8.6 − 6.51
```
   8 . 6 0
 - 6 . 5 1
   2 . 0 9
```

```
   2 . 3 6 7
 + 8 . 1 4 5
  10 . 5 1 2
```

```
  10 . 5 1 2
 - 8 . 1 4 5
   2 . 3 6 7
```

Solving problems

If one tree is 3.459 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees ?

- لاحظ استخدام كلمة "difference" في المسائل الكلامية التي تعني الفرق بين الأرقام أي أننا نقوم بعملية طرح [subtract][-].

- نقوم باتباع الخطوات السابقة في الحل :

```
   3 . 4 59
 - 2 . 7 53
   0 . 7 06
```

Jihan runs 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran ?

- لاحظ استخدام كلمة "total" والتي تعني مجموع الأرقام الموجودة. أي أننا نقوم بعملية الجمع :

```
   3 . 5 67
 + 5 . 2 58
   8 . 8 25
```



Pop Quiz on Math

1 Circle the correct answers.

1. 7.983 + 5.432 = 13.415 / 134.15
2. 9.076 + 8.894 = 1.7970 / 17.970

2 Find the result.

1. 23.7 + 6.38 = ...
2. 93.4 − 66.83 = ...
3. 4.28 + 3.56 = ...
4. 8.53 − 1.97 = ...

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I'm good at .... chess.
   a. play b. playing c. played d. plays
2. Football is my favorite to .... on TV.
   a. watch b. play c. do d. jump
3. I'm good at reading, but I'm .... at drawing.
   a. great b. bad c. good d. nice
4. Cats .... good at jumping.
   a. does b. is c. are d. do

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. They're good	( ) a. good at?
2. Which are your	( ) b. they can move fast.
3. What are you	( ) c. at handball.
4. I play football	( ) d. in a team.
	( ) e. favorite sports?

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Asser is my brother. He is 11 years old. He's good at playing tennis but he's bad at helping me in the kitchen! My sister's name is Salma. She is 8 years old. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room! Mazen and Reem are my cousins. Reem is good at drawing. She likes cats. Mazen likes monkeys. Monkeys are good at climbing trees.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about ....
   a. Dalia and her family b. playing football
   c. cats and monkeys d. growing plants
2. .... is good at doing math.
   a. Asser b. Salma c. Mazen d. Reem

(_) (_)

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What is Asser bad at ?

....

4. What animal does Reem like ?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. at – writing – My sister – good – poems – is.

....

2. do – I – on – karate – own – my.

....

3. practices – He – football – in – every day – a team.

....

4. at – bad – What – you – are – sports ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

Nader and maher are playing tennis

....

6 Write an email of about FORTY (40) words to your friend Yassmin to tell her about the sports that you're good at. Your name is Nour. Your email address is nour@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is yassmin@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

- football
- good at

New message ×

Secure | https:

From :

To :

Subject :

....

....

....

....

....

....

( ) ( )

Lesson 3

▶ Sports places and equipment
▶ Pronunciation



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


karate suit
بدلة الكاراتية


football boots
حذاء كرة القدم


tennis ball
كرة تنس


swimming goggles
نظارة السباحة


squash rackets
مضارب الإسكواش


tennis court
ملعب التنس


football pitch
ملعب كرة القدم


swimming pool
حمام سباحة

Extra vocabulary

high kicks	ركلات عالية	best	أفضل
kicking a ball	ركل الكرة	moves	حركات
rhyme	يتناغم	walls	حوائط
place	مكان	equipment	معدات
kung fu	رياضة الكونغ فو		

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Sports equipment	pitch	We play football on the football pitch.
	boots	We wear football boots to play football.
	goggles	We wear swimming goggles to go swimming.
	rackets	We use our rackets to play squash.
	tennis court	We play tennis on the tennis court.

II Listening and Reading

Listen and look. استمع وانظر.



I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

أنا أحب رياضي - ركل الكرة في الملعب هو الشيء المفضل لي.





Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.

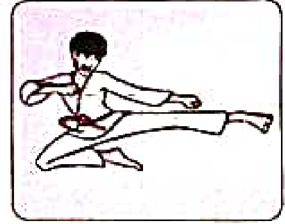
أن أكون في حمام السباحة وأمارس هذه الرياضة هو أفضل شيء بالنسبة لي.





I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best.

أحب الطريقة التي أقوم بها بعمل الكثير من الحركات المختلفة. أكثر ما أحب هي الركلات العالية.





You have to play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast.

يجب أن تلعب في ملعب صغير محاط بحوائط. لديك مضرب صغير وأنت تتحرك بسرعة كبيرة.





I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

أعتقد أنها رياضة رائعة وأنا أتدرب كثيرًا في فصل الصيف. فهم لديهم ملاعب تنس في الحديقة وأنا أذهب هناك مع أصدقائي.



Notes for parents

- Help your child to listen and look at the pictures.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع وينظر إلى الصور.

⭐ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.



boots

- This is what I wear to play football.

هذا ما أرتديه لكى ألعب كرة القدم.



pitch

- This is where I play football.

هذا هو المكان الذى ألعب فيه كرة القدم.



swimming pool

- This is where I go swimming.

هذا هو المكان الذى أذهب فيه للسباحة.



goggles

- This is what I wear to go swimming.

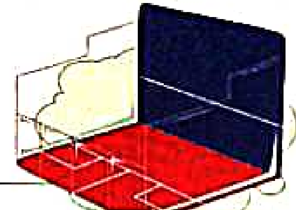
هذا ما أرتديه لكى أذهب للسباحة.



rackets

- This is what I use to play squash.

هذا ما أستخدمه لألعب الإسكواش.



small court

- This is where I play squash.

هذا هو المكان الذى ألعب فيه الإسكواش.



karate suit

- This is what I wear to do karate.

هذا ما أرتديه عندما أمارس لعبة الكاراتيه.



high kicks

- This is what I do when I do karate.

هذا ما أفعله عندما أقوم بلعب رياضة الكاراتيه.

• Help your child identify sports places, clothes and equipment.

- ساعد طفلك فى التعرف على أماكن الرياضات والزى الخاص بها والأدوات الرياضية.

(_) (_)

III Phonics

★ **Listen and repeat.** استمع وردد.

1 How to count sounds in a word ١.كيفية عد الأصوات في الكلمة

- We count the sounds we pronounce in the words, not the written letters in the words. - نحن نعد فقط الأصوات المنطوقة في الكلمات وليس الحروف المكتوبة.
- When two letter sounds are put together, they can make a new sound: - قد يتحد حرفين معا فينتج عنهم صوت آخر مختلف.

letters	sound	example
ch	/tʃ/	chips
sh	/ʃ/	fish
th	/θ/	three
th	/ ð /	mother
ph	/f/	elephant
ng	/ŋ/	sing
wh	/w/	what
ck	/k/	duck
ll	/l/	ball

- Break the words into individual sounds to count them. - قسم الكلمة إلى أصوات مفردة حتى تتمكن من عدها.

sock → s | o | ck

★ **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

How many sounds are there in ..... ?

neck → n | e | ck → "It has 3 sounds."

doll → d | o | ll → "It has 3 sounds."

fish → f | i | sh → "It has 3 sounds."

full → f | u | ll → "It has 3 sounds."

2 Short and long vowels ٢. الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والممدودة

- There are five vowels in English : (a, e, i, o, u)

Short a /æ/	Short e / e /	Short u / ʌ /	Short i / I /	Short o / ɒ /
hat	pen	nut	sit	dog
cat	egg	cup	fish	pot
Long a /eI/	**Long e /i:/**	**Long u /u:/**	**Long i /aI/**	**Long o / əʊ/**
cake	bee	cube	bike	rose
pain	feet	fuel	night	cone

3 Syllables ٣. المقاطع

A syllable : is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

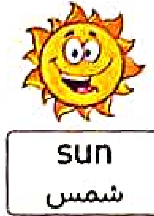
المقطع اللفظى : هو جزء من كلمة تحتوى على صوت متحرك واحد منفرد.

A. One-syllable words (single syllable words) : • كلمات ذات مقطع واحد :


man
رجل


cat
قطة


red
لون أحمر


sun
شمس


pen
قلم جاف


sock
فردة جورب

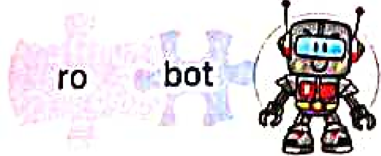
B. Two-syllable words : • كلمات ذات مقطعين :















Pop Quiz on Phonics

1 Read and write how many sounds are in each word.

1. doll ....
2. neck ....
3. fish ....
4. pen ....
5. window ....
6. sun ....
7. teacher ....
8. full ....
9. paper ....
10. red ....

2 Read and tick (✓) the words with long vowel sounds.

1. cry ☐
2. swim ☐
3. so ☐
4. fuel ☐
5. make ☐
6. cube ☐
7. feet ☐

3 Match the syllables to make words.

1. spi • — • a. per
2. teach • — • b. bot
3. ro • — • c. der
4. pa • — • d. er

(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Sara likes sports. ☐
2. Dina is good at karate. ☐
3. Dina isn't good at swimming. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1. Heba loves ....
2. Amany's favorite sport is ....
3. Amany wears her .... to do karate.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She is bad at .... math.
   a. does b. do c. doing d. did
2. I use my .... to play squash.
   a. goggles b. racket c. suit d. sunglasses
3. I like .... because I can do a lot of moves and high kicks.
   a. swimming b. tennis c. squash d. kung fu
4. I am great .... squash because I practice a lot.
   a. on b. of c. at d. with

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. A swimming pool is	☐ a. I use my goggles.
2. When I swim,	☐ b. where I go swimming.
3. We play tennis	☐ c. when I play football.
4. I wear my boots	☐ d. is my favorite.
	☐ e. on the courts.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. practice – I – a lot – in – summer.

....

2. go – I – swimming – friends – my – with.

....

3. is – a ball – Kicking – my – thing – favorite.

....

4. pitch – We – on – play – football – the.

....

6 Read the text and answer the questions.

Football is one of the most popular sports in the world. People like it very much. People play football on pitches. It is one of the most important games in the Olympic Games since 1900. People play football by foot only, but the goalkeeper is the only player who can hold the ball with his/her hands. People play football in two teams. Each team consists of eleven players. The winner is the team who scores the most goals in the match.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People play football on ....
   a. pools   b. pitches   c. farms   d. court
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....
   a. foot   b. the match   c. football   d. the pitch

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who can hold the ball with his/her hands?

....

4. Summarize the text into one sentence.

....

7 Punctuate the following.

yasser wears his boots to play football

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Sports equipment

Guiding elements:

- football boots
- karate suit

....

....

....

(__) (__)

Lessons 4 & 5

- Writing : a sports Biography
- Project [water pollution]



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

Olympic	أوليمبي	champion	بطل	wildlife	حياة برية
athlete	رياضي	prize	جائزة	competitor	مُنافس
water pollution	تلوث المياه	taekwondo	تايكوندو	effects	آثار
amazing	مدهش	biography	سيرة ذاتية	old people	كبار السن

Extra vocabulary

training	تدريب	against	ضد	Rio Olympics	دورة (ريو) للألعاب الأولمبية
sportsperson	شخص رياضي	future	مستقبل	therefore	نتيجة لذلك
water bodies	مسطحات مائية	wastewater	مياه الصرف	agricultural	زراعي
garbage	قمامة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية	sink	حوض
harmful	ضار	organisms	كائنات حية	solutions	الحلول
Moroccan	مغربي (الجنسية)	successful	ناجح	causes	أسباب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
destroy	يدمر	destroyed
join	ينضم/يلتحق	joined
continue	يستمر	continued
avoid	يتجنب	avoided

Irregular

Present		Past
win	يفوز	won
become	يصبح	became
lose	يفقد	lost

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

with special needs	ذوي احتياجات خاصة	famous for	مشهور بـ ......
at the age of	في عمر	win a medal	يفوز بميدالية
compete against	يتنافس ضد		

(_) (_)

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Hedaya Malak	famous - taekwondo	She is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player.
	flag - Olympic Games	She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games.
	bronze	She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics.
	athlete - special	She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs.
Water pollution	harmful	Water pollution is harmful.
	chemical	Chemicals that go into rivers and lakes make water pollution.
	kill - crabs	Polluted water can kill fish, birds and crabs.
	destroy	Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.
	garbage - beach	Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Who the famous sportsperson is

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing!



من هو الرياضي المشهور

١. هداية ملاك هي لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة، وهي واحدة من الشخصين الذين قاموا برفع العلم المصري في دورة الألعاب الأولمبية في طوكيو عام ٢٠٢١. مدهش.

Further information about her sport and her prizes.

2. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

مزيد من المعلومات عن الرياضة التي تمارسها وجوائزها

٢. ولدت هداية في ٢١ أبريل عام ١٩٩٣. لقد بدأت ممارسة التايكوندو في سن السابعة وفازت بالعديد من الجوائز في سن الرابعة عشر. فازت بالميدالية البرونزية في دورة الألعاب الأولمبية في ريو عام ٢٠١٦. فازت أيضًا بالميدالية البرونزية في طوكيو عام ٢٠٢١.

Notes for parents

- Help your child to look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص

Something else she is famous for

3. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

شيء آخر تشتهر به

٣. هداية شخصية لطيفة جدًا. في عام ٢٠١٦ قامت بمساعدة شخصية رياضية مغربية الجنسية من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة تدعى رجاء قرماش. لم يكن لدى رجاء احد لتتنافس ضده لذلك أصبحت هداية منافستها وخسرت. لذلك استطاعت رجاء الفوز بالميدالية الذهبية وكانت لحظة مميزة جدًا لها.

What Hedaya will do next

4. What does Hedaya do now? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

ماذا ستفعل هداية فيما بعد

٤. ماذا تفعل هداية الآن؟ إنها تتدرب بجد. إنها تريد حقًا الفوز بالميدالية الذهبية!

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What is Hedaya Malak's sport?
- Taekwondo.

Practice 2. Who won the gold medal in 2016?
....

III Writing skill

How to write a sports biography.

كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن بطل رياضي.

1 Introduce the person, giving their name. - قم بتقديم الشخص (معطيا اسمه)

- (اسم البطل الرياضي ....) is a famous (اسم الرياضة ....) player.
- He/She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد ....
- She/He began practicing (اسم الرياضة ....) at the age of (العمر ......).

2 Say why they are famous and give details about their sport.

- قل لماذا هم مشهورين واعط التفاصيل عن رياضتهم.

- She / He was the first ....
- She / He was / is successful because ....
- She / He won (many prizes / the bronze medal / the gold medal).

• Help your child write a sports biography.

- ساعد طفلك أن يكتب سيرة ذاتية عن بطل رياضي.

3 Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.
- اعط تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم ممتعين مهمين.

- He is also ......
- Moreover / As well as this, he/she is ......

4 Say what you think could happen next for their career.
- قل ما تعتقد أنه سيحدث لهم في حياتهم العملية فيما بعد.

- I think he / she will become the most ....

A sports biography about Sherif Osman

Sherif Osman is a famous athlete. He won many prizes. He can compete in important competitions. He wants to win new medals in the future. His sport is weightlifting. He spends many hours training every day.

شريف عثمان هو رياضي مشهور. لقد فاز بالعديد من الجوائز ويريد أن يفوز بميداليات جديدة مستقبلاً. الرياضة التي يمارسها هي رفع الأثقال. أنه يقضي العديد من الساعات في التدريب يومياً.



Sherif Osman paralympic champion



Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

Write a biography about your favorite, famous person.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to write about his/her favorite, famous person.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب عن شخص مشهور مفضل بالنسبة له أو لها

(_) (_)

IV Project

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Water pollution
تلوث المياه



When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.



عندما تتسرب المواد الكيميائية الضارة إلى المسطحات المائية مثل الأنهار والبحيرات والبحار، فإننا نسمى هذا تلوث المياه. يمكن أن يقتل تلوث المياه الكائنات الحية التي تعيش في المياه مثل الأسماك والطيور و سلطعون البحر. كما يمكن أن يقتل الطيور التي تأكل الأسماك. ويمكن أن يتسبب تلوث المياه في فقدان الحيوانات لمواطنها وتغيير بيئاتهم.

Causes المسببات



- Wastewater from sinks, toilets and showers
  مياه الصرف من الأحواض ودورات المياه والاستحمام
- Wastewater and chemicals from factories
  مياه الصرف والمواد الكيميائية من المصانع
- Wastewater from agricultural land and cities into rivers
  مياه الصرف من الأراضي الزراعية والمدن إلى الأنهار

Effects الآثار



- Dirty water can make children and old people ill.
  يمكن للمياه الغير نظيفة أن تمرض الأطفال وكبار السن.
- Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.
  المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية في الأنهار.

Solutions الحلول

- Save as much water as possible. حافظ على الكثير من المياه بقدر الإمكان.
- Take shorter showers. خذ حمام (دُش) أقصر.
- Avoid running water. تجنب ترك المياه جارية.
- Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.
  لا تلقِ أبدًا القمامة في أو بالقرب من بحيرة أو شاطئ.

• Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص

(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo ....
2. Hedaya Malak is a very .... person.
3. Hedaya helped a Moroccan .... with special needs.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Hedaya began practicing	( ) a. April 21,1993.
2. Hedaya was born on	( ) b. kill organisms.
3. Athletes want to	( ) c. taekwondo at seven.
4. Water pollution can	( ) d. take short shower.
	( ) e. win the gold medal.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. does – What – Hedaya – now – do ?

....

2. can – we – How – make – cleaner – our water ?

....

3. rivers – wildlife – in – Polluted – destroys – water.

....

4. is – famous – Why – he – sportsperson – a ?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. She is good at sports. She's a famous ....
   a. athlete b. doctor c. teacher d. vet
2. I won a prize .... the age of 10.
   a. in b. on c. next d. at
3. Raja Garmash is an athlete .... special needs.
   a. in b. with c. by d. at
4. Water pollution is very ....
   a. useful b. good c. harmful d. helpful

(_) (_)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are a lot of famous sportspersons in our community. Hedaya Malak and Mohamed Salah are very famous. My cousin Noha likes practicing sports. Her favorite sport is taekwondo. She wants to be an athlete as Hedaya Malak. Hedaya is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. When she was seven, she began practicing taekwondo. She won many prizes at the age of fourteen.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Noha wants to be a/an ....
   a. teacher b. vet c. athlete d. doctor
2. Hedaya Malak is a .... player.
   a. basketball b. football c. tennis d. taekwondo

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is Noha's favorite sport ?

....

4. What did Hedaya Malak win at the age of 14 ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

save as much water as possible

....

7 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A famous athlete

Guiding elements :

- compete
- prizes

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

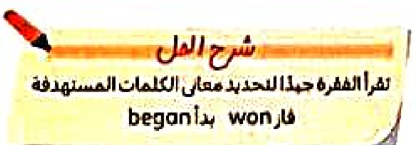
التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة فى تحديد معنى الكلمة، اقرأ النص جيدًا وخمن المعنى.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. Hedaya won many important prizes. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.



1. The underlined word "won" is the opposite of the word ....
   a. learnt (b. lost) c. took d. had

2. The underlined word "began" has the same meaning as ....
   (a. started) b. finished c. traveled d. carried

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

1. The underlined word "harmful" means ....
   a. dangerous b. good c. safe d. well

2. "Water pollution" means that water isn't ....
   a. bad b. unhealthy c. clean d. polluted

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (سيرة ذاتية عن بطل رياضى) و (تلوث الماء) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
A sports athlete	**Write the meaning :** برونزية .... ميدالية .... علم .... يفوز .... مشهور .... علم	**Complete the sentences :** 1. Hedaya Malak is a .... Egyptian taekwondo player. 2. Hedaya carried the Egyptian .... in Tokyo. 3. She won the .... medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. 4. She really wants to win a gold	**Write a biography using the sentences :** "A sports athlete" ....
Water pollution	مواد كيميائية .... مواطن .... يقتل .... كائنات حية .... بحيرات .... يغير	1. Water pollution can kill .... that live in the water. 2. It can also .... birds that eat the fish. 3. It can cause animals to lose their homes and change their .... 4. Harmful .... pollute water bodies.	**Write a paragraph using the sentences :** "Water pollution" ....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٣ جملة].

1 Sports equipment

I like to play football on the pitch[1]. I wear my football boots to play with my friends[2]. My sister always goes swimming in the pool[3]. She uses her goggles to protect her eyes[4]. My brother uses his racket to play squash[5]. We all love sports because they're very good for us.[6]

2 Famous Egyptian athlete

Hedaya Malak is a very famous Egyptian sportsperson[7]. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021[8]. She was born on April 21, 1993[9]. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven[10]. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs to win a competition[11]. She won many prizes[12].

3 Sports

I'm very good at swimming[13]. I'm in the school team[14]! But I'm very bad at tennis[15]. My brother is bad at football[16]. He is great at taekwondo[17].

4 Water pollution

Water pollution is very harmful[18]. When chemicals go into water, they pollute water[19]. Water from sinks, toilets and showers can cause water pollution[20]. Plastic is very dangerous[21]. Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach[22]. We must work hard to stop pollution[23].

(__) (__)

TEST YOUR SKILLS



I want to be healthy !



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the following dialog with the words in the box.

tennis – time – playing – sports

Selim : Hello, Wael. What (1) .... do you like to watch ?

Wael : I love watching swimming, (2) .... and football.

Selim : So do I, and I'm good at (3) .... tennis.

Wael : Let's go to the club and play later.

Selim : What (4) .... do you want to play ?

Wael : About five o'clock.

My Language

2 Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. She's bad at.................. (save) her money.
2. My brother is very good at .... (speak) English.
3. I'm good at................. (sing) songs.

My Writing

3

1. Write a diary of about (30-40) words about "Your favorite sport"

Nour

July, 21st

Dear Diary,

2. Write a text message to your friend about (30-40) words about "A sport you're good at"

....

....

....

....

My Project

4 Make a poster about water pollution.



قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on Unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

squash	رياضة الإسكواش
kung fu	رياضة الكونغ فو
sailing	الإبحار
karate	لعبة الكاراتيه
handball	كرة يد
football	كرة قدم
tennis	تنس
swimming	السباحة
taekwondo	التايكوندو
athlete	رياضي
chemicals	مواد كيميائية
nightmare	كابوس
squash racket	مضرب الإسكواش
football pitch	ملعب كرة القدم
lungs	رئتين
pollution	تلوث

Phonics

- Short vowels
  cup – pot - sit – bat
- Long vowels
  cube – rose - feet – cake
- Syllables
  a. one-syllable words
  red – neck
  b. two-syllable words
  robot – teacher

Language

- Talking about things we do or don't do well.

التحدث عن أشياء نفعلها أو لا نفعلها بطريقة جيدة.

great at	رائع في
good at	جيد في
bad at	سيئ في

→ inf. + ing / noun

- I'm very good at playing football, but I'm very bad at sailing.
- He's great at drawing.

(__) (__)

Test 3 on Unit 2

• نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Dalia loves playing football. ☐
2. Dalia can run very fast. ☐
3. Dalia likes watching films on TV. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1. Seif is good at ....
2. Seif plays football at the ....
3. Ali and Seif will play together in a ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I'm good at table tennis, but I'm bad at ....
   a. swam b. swimming c. swims d. swim
2. I wear my swimming .... to go swimming.
   a. boots b. kicks c. goggles d. rackets
3. My brother won many .... He's a good athlete.
   a. prizes b. problems c. plans d. tools
4. They're great at .... their mom in the kitchen.
   a. helping b. helps c. help d. helped

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. I play football on	☐ a. a very kind athlete.
2. Hedaya Malak is	☐ b. kill fish and crabs.
3. I'm good	☐ c. the pitch.
4. Water pollution can	☐ d. at playing tennis.
	☐ e. harmful chemicals.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was born in 1993. When she was seven, she began practicing taekwondo. She won many prizes at the age of fourteen. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She is practicing hard because she wants to win a gold medal.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian .... player.
   a. karate   b. taekwondo   c. football   d. basketball
2. The underlined word "began" means ....
   a. won   b. started   c. watched   d. liked

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is Hedaya practicing hard ?

   ....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. sports – in Egypt – What – have – do – we ?

   ....

2. sports – Which – you – would – to try – like ?

   ....

3. watching – He – match – a – squash – is.

   ....

4. throw – Never – in – garbage – lakes.

   ....

7 Punctuate the following.

i don t go to school on Fridays

....

8 Write a biography of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A famous Egyptian athlete

Guiding elements :

• practice   • competitions

....

....

....

....

(_) (_)

Test 4 on Unit 2

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

(أسيوط / صدفا ٢٠٢٣)

1. Hedaya Malak is a very famous Egyptian engineer. ☐
2. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympics. ☐
3. She didn't win any prizes. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

(الإسماعيلية / القصاصين ٢٠٢٣)

1. Ayman is very good at ....
2. He is in the school ....
3. He is very bad at ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Salma is very good at .... English.
   a. speak b. spoke c. speaks d. speaking
2. I'm bad at playing the piano, but I'm good .... singing.
   a. by b. at c. as d. near
3. I wear my football .... to play with my friends.
   a. glasses b. boots c. belts d. books
4. Water .... is a very dangerous problem.
   a. pollution b. population c. wheel d. sport

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. My favorite sports (القاهرة / الساحل ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. stop pollution.
2. I wear my goggles when (قنا / نقادة ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. pollute water.
3. Chemicals can (أسوان / إدفو ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. are tennis and football.
4. We must work hard to (سوهاج / جرجا ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. I sleep.
	☐ e. I go swimming.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Water pollution is a type of pollution where different bodies of water such as rivers, lakes, and seas can be dirty because of harmful chemicals. There are many causes of water pollution such as wastewater, toilets and showers. Some big factories throw harmful chemicals into the water and make it dirty.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. There are many .... of water pollution.
   a. different   b. rivers   c. causes   d. factories
2. Lakes, rivers and seas are .... of water.
   a. toilets   b. bodies   c. showers   d. sinks

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does "water pollution" mean?

....

4. How can factories cause pollution? [القاهرة / النزهة ٢٠٢٣]

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. squash – playing – I – am – at – bad. [دمياط / الزرقا ٢٠٢٣]

....

2. pollution – dangerous – Water – very – is. [الوادي الجديد / الداخلة ٢٠٢٣]

....

3. birds – pollution – kill – Water – can. [الإسكندرية / العجمي ٢٠٢٣]

....

4. prizes – many – She – won – year – last. [الدقهلية / غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Punctuate the following. [السويس / جنوب ٢٠٢٣]

I live with my family in aswan

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY [40] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

[الغربية / شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٣]

A sport you like

Guiding elements :

- What do you wear to do it?
- Where do you do it?

....
....
....
....
....
....

(_) (_)



STOP HERE!

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

▶ **Listen and choose the correct answer.** استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I like to play .... on the pitch. (basketball – football – swimming)
2. My brother uses his .... to play squash. (goggles – racket – glasses)

B. Language Functions

▶ **Read and complete the dialogue.** اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة.

football – club – Where

A : What sport are you good at ?

B : I'm good at (1) ....

A : (2) .... do you play it ?

B : At the (3) .... with my friends.

A : How about playing together ?

B : That's great!

C. Vocabulary and structures

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... is a bad dream.
   a. greenhouse b. nightmare c. climate
2. Hedaya Malak won the bronze .... at the Rio Olympics.
   a. medal b. necklace c. shoes
3. I'm very good at .... English.
   a. speak b. speaks c. speaking
4. She's very bad at making cakes, but she's good at .... shawerma.
   a. make b. making c. makes
5. He's good .... playing tennis.
   a. for b. to c. at



(_) (_)



Unit 3 How do I look ?

كيف أبدو ؟

Aims of Unit Three : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.
  - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الملابس.
- listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.
  - الاستماع إلى محادثة عن تحزيم الأمتعة من أجل الإجازة.
- practice using the infinitive of purpose.
  - أتدرب على استخدام صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن غرض ما.
- read a traditional folktale.
  - قراءة حكاية شعبية تقليدية.
- learn how to say past simple endings /d/, /t/, and /Id/.
  - أتعلم كيف أقول نهايات الماضي البسيط /d/ ، /t/ و /Id/.
- multiply multi-digit numbers.
  - أقوم بعملية ضرب الأرقام المتعددة.
- write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.
  - أكتب وصف عن الملابس المفضلة لدى مستخدمًا الصفات.
- research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.
  - أبحث وأصنع منشورًا عن الملابس التقليدية من جميع أنحاء العالم.

(_) (_)

Lesson 1 ▶ Our trip to Al Fayoum



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


sweater سترة


T-shirt تي شيرت

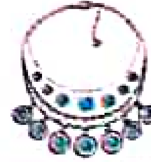

coat معطف


pajamas بيجامة

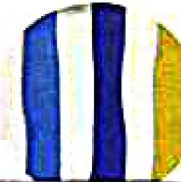

scarf وشاح


sunglasses
نظارة شمسية


sneakers
حذاء رياضي


necklace
قلادة/ عقد


suitcase
حقيبة سفر


striped
مخطط


spotted
منقط


galabeya
جلابية


swimming shorts
شورت للسباحة (مايوه)

Extra vocabulary

uniform	زي موحد	cool	منعش / بارد	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
lovely	محبوب / جميل	Al Fayoum	مدينة الفيوم	comfortable	مريح
sunny	مشمس	gold	ذهب	stripes	خطوط
trip	رحلة قصيرة	pool	حمام سباحة	excited	متحمس
traditional	تقليدي	exciting	مشوق/رائع	holiday	عطلة / إجازة
modern	حديث	pearl	لؤلؤ	man-made	من صنع الإنسان

Did you know ? هل تعلم ؟

Cotton grows in the Nile Delta.
- ينمو القطن في دلتا النيل

Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world.
- يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن القطن المصري هو أفضل قطن في العالم.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
pack	يرتب / يحزم أمتعته	packed	give	يعطي	gave
wait	ينتظر	waited	wear	يرتدي	wore

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

walk around	يتجول	come on	هيا / تقدم / أسرع
in the evenings	في أوقات المساء	on your feet	في قدميك
for ages	منذ وقت طويل	with stripes	ذات خطوط

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Our trip to Al Fayoum	Al Fayoum	Aser and his mom will go to Al Fayoum.
	pack - suitcase	They need to pack their suitcases.
	sneakers	They will walk around a lot so Aser will need his sneakers.
	gold - necklace	Mom will take her gold necklace.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. At bedtime, I put on my ....
   a. answer b. shoes c. pajamas d. suitcase
2. She puts on her ...., hat and gloves in winter.
   a. shorts b. coat c. suitcase d. lunch
3. He packed his clothes in a small .... for the weekend.
   a. sweater b. pencil case c. suitcase d. sharpener
4. She likes to wear golden .... around her neck.
   a. necklaces b. sunglasses c. T-shirts d. shoes
5. My school .... is very nice.
   a. galabeya b. uniform c. necklace d. sneakers
6. My pajamas are very .... I like wearing them.
   a. bad b. comfortable c. hard d. poor

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

II Listening and Reading

⭐ **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Aser and his mom are packing clothes to go to Al Fayoum.



Aser, we need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

آسر نحتاج إلى أن نحزم أمتعتنا لقضاء إجازتنا غدًا.





It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

هذا أمر مشوق للغاية! لا أستطيع الانتظار للذهاب إلى مدينة الفيوم لرؤية العم حاتم والعمة ملك. وبالطبع فارس و دينا.



I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

أنا أعرف. أنا متحمسة لرؤيتهم أيضًا. نحن لم نراهم منذ وقت طويل! لكن هيا، نحن بحاجة لحزم أمتعتنا!



OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

حسنًا، أريد أن أحزم في الحقيبة التي شيرت الأخضر وشورت السباحة (مايوه) الخاص بي لأن لديهم حمام سباحة جميل، أليس كذلك؟



Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

نعم، وتذكر نظارتك الشمسية. سيكون الجو مشمس جدًا.



Will I need a coat and a scarf?

هل سأحتاج إلى معطف ووشاح؟



No, Aser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

لا، يا آسر، لن نحتاج لذلك. لكن يجب أن تحزم شترة. إنه من الممكن أن يكون الجو بارد في أوقات المساء.



OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

حسنًا. سأحزم شترتي الزرقاء. انها المفضلة بالنسبة لي.



You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

ستحتاج إلى حذائك الرياضي لأننا سنتجول كثيرًا و ستحتاج إلى ارتداء شيء مريح في قدميك.



What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

ماذا عن أفضل جلابية لدي؟ هل سأحتاج إلى تلك الجلابية التي أعطتني إياها جدتي؟

Note: We use "will + inf." to talk about future actions.

يستخدم (will + inf.) بمعنى «سوف» للتحدث عن أحداث مستقبلية

(_) (_)



No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.
لا، لن تحتاج إليها. لكنى سأخذ العقد الذهبي الخاص بي.



Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the stripes. They're really cool!
ممم. حسنًا. ماذا أحتاج أيضًا؟ آه، أعلم! بيجاماتي! سآخذ التي بها خطوط. إنها حقًا لطيفة!

III Listening script

Narrator : 1
Speaker : Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought some striped pajamas.

Narrator : 2
Speaker : Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.

Narrator : 3
Speaker : Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.

Narrator : 4
Speaker : Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.

IV Language functions

1 To express the need for doing something :
١. للتعبير عن الحاجة لفعل شيء ما :

I need to + inf. مصدر الفعل .



I need to pack my green T-shirt. أريد أن أحزم التي شيرت الأخضر الخاص بي.

2 Imperative form ٢. صيغة الأمر

Inf. مصدر الفعل **+** باقي الجملة .



Come on, we need to pack our suitcases for the holiday.
هيا، نحتاج إلى أن نحزم امتعتنا للإجازة.





That's exciting!
هذا أمر مشوق (رائع)!

Notes for parents

1. Help your child learn how to express the need for doing something.
2. Help your child to use the imperative form.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يعبر عن الحاجة لفعل شيء ما
- ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم صيغة الأمر

(__) (__)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. She wears a gold .... around her neck.
   a. necklace b. bracelet c. dress d. sunglasses
2. .... to take your sunglasses to protect your eyes.
   a. Remembering b. Remembers
   c. Remember d. To remember
3. I bought new swimming .... to swim in the pool.
   a. coats b. scarfs c. umbrellas d. shorts
4. I need to .... my coat and scarf because it's cold.
   a. wearing b. wear c. wears d. wore

2 Read and match [A] with [B].

[A]	[B]
1. I'll pack	( ) a. it's cold at night.
2. I wear sneakers	( ) b. striped.
3. I need a sweater because	( ) c. on my hand.
4. My pajamas are	( ) d. on my feet.
	( ) e. my suitcase.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Youssef, Nesma, and Wael are friends. They are at the same age. They will visit Al Fayoum next Friday. They are very excited to go there. They need to pack their suitcases for the holiday. Youssef will need his sneakers because they will walk around a lot and he needs to wear something comfortable on his feet. Nesma will pack her sunglasses because it will be very sunny there. Wael will pack his swimming shorts because he wants to go swimming there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "excited" means ....
   a. angry b. sad c. happy d. hungry
2. It will be sunny in Al Fayoum so Nesma will pack her ....
   a. necklace b. sunglasses c. pajamas d. skirt

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When will the friends visit Al Fayoum?

4. Why does Youssef want to pack his sneakers?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. her – waiting – She – mum – is – for.

2. We – lovely – have – a – pool.

3. wears – comfortable – a – She – shirt.

4. sneakers – I – my – pack – need – to.

5 Punctuate the following.

which pajamas does she like

6 Write an email of about FORTY (40) words to your friend Ali about a trip to Al Fayoum. Your name is Adel and your email address is adel@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- What do you need?
- What will you do there?

New message ×

From:

To:

Subject:

(_) (_)

Lesson 2

- My favorite clothes
- Language focus



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

belt	حزام	sleeve	كُم	hidden	مخبأ - مخفى
crown	تاج	costume	زى (تنكرى)	Egyptian clothing	الملابس المصرية
pocket	جيب	gloves	قفازات	robe	رداء / ثوب
galabeya	جلابية	cotton	قطن	popular	محبوب / شائع

Extra vocabulary

hall	صالة	wedding	حفل زفاف	Eid	العيد
colorful	ملون	pattern	نمط / شكل	essay	مقال
grades	درجات	princess	أميرة	social media	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعى
useful	مفيد	festival	احتفال	cardboard	ورق مقوى / كرتون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	leave	يغادر	left
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	sleep	ينام	slept

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

tell me about	يخبرنى عن	looks really cool	تبدو لطيفة جدًا
get sunburned	يصاب بحروق شمس	from the outside	من الخارج
do a school project	يقوم بمشروع بحثى مدرسى		

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Traditional clothes	galabeya – robe	The galabeya is a long white robe.
	made – cotton	The galabeya is made from cotton.
	long – sleeves	The galabeya has long sleeves.
	hidden	The pockets of galabeya are hidden.

(_) (_)

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Fares is talking to his friend Tomas on social media about clothes.



Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?
مرحبًا يا فارس. هل بإمكانك مساعدتي؟ أقوم بعمل مشروع بحثي مدرسي عن الملابس المصرية هل تستطيع أن تعطيني بعض المعلومات؟



Hi, Tomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?
مرحبًا يا توماس. نعم، بالطبع. ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟



Well, what do you usually wear? حسنًا، ماذا ترتدي عادةً؟





I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.
أعيش في سوهاج وهنا عادة ما يكون الجو حارًا جدًا. اليوم أنا أرتدي شورت وتي شيرت.



Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?
رائع! هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن بعض الملابس التقليدية المصرية؟



Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular.
اوه بالطبع. حسنًا، يرتدي الكثير من الرجال الجلابية. إنه رداء أبيض طويل ويحظى بشعبية كبيرة.



Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.
نعم، لقد رأيت ذلك. يبدو ارتداء هذا رائع حقًا.



Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!
نعم، إن الجلابية رائعة لأنها مصنوعة من القطن. عادةً ما يكون لونها أبيض، لكن يمكنك الحصول على ألوان أخرى أيضًا. الأكمام طويلة حتى لا نتعرض لحروق الشمس!



Are there pockets? هل يوجد جيوب بها؟



Yes! But they're hidden – you can't see them from the outside.
نعم! لكنها مخفية – لا يمكنك رؤيتها من الخارج.

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly.
- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة



Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival ?
هل ترتدون الجلابية عند الاحتفال بمهرجان أعياد / خاص ؟



We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.
نفعل ذلك، والملابس التي نرتديها للعيد، على سبيل المثال، تكون جميلة جدًا. يمكن أن تكون ملونة. أحيانًا يوجد عليها أشكال جميلة.



Thanks, Fares. That's really useful !
شكرًا يا فارس. هذا مفيد حقًا !

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. What's the weather like in Sohag ? ....
a. Hot b. Rainy c. Cold d. Snowy

Practice 2. Galabeya is a / an .... clothes is Egypt.
a. expensive b. modern c. traditional d. bad

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

1. Marwa is wearing a spotted dress with a belt. There are two pockets.
2. Reem is wearing a costume. She looks like a princess ! She has a crown on her head. She has white gloves on her hands.



III Listening script

Narrator : 1
Speaker : I went to town to buy a beautiful new dress for the party.
Narrator : 2
Speaker : I got some cardboard paper to make my poster.
Narrator : 3
Speaker : I searched on the internet to find the information for my homework.
Narrator : 4
Speaker : I bought a scarf and gloves to keep me warm.

• Help your child to look at the picture and read the sentences. • ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ الجمل

1 مروة ترتدي فستانًا منقطًا به حزام. يوجد جيبين في الفستان 2 ريم ترتدي زي تنكري. هي تبدو كأنها أميرة! لديها تاج على رأسها. وقفازات بيضاء في يديها

IV Language Functions

To talk about your favorites. للتحدث عن الأشياء المفضلة

My favorite thing is اسم الشيء . | الشيء المفضل لدي هو اسم الشيء



My favorite thing is my sweater. | الشيء المفضل لدي هو سترتي

V Language Focus

1 Infinitive of purpose ١. استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

Usage : We use (to + infinitive) to express purpose, and to say why someone does something.

- نستخدم (مصدر الفعل .to + inf) للتعبير عن الهدف من القيام بفعل شيء أو ذكر سبب قيام شخص ما بفعل شيء ما

Examples :



She went to town to buy a dress.
هي ذهبت إلى المدينة لتشتري فستان

He went to the club to play football.
هو ذهب إلى النادي ليلعب كرة القدم



2 The Past Simple Tense ٢. زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation : التكوين

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

A. Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

◂ عند التحويل لزمن الماضي يضاف (ed) لمعظم الافعال المنتظمة look - looked

◂ لاحظ قواعد إضافة (d / ed / ied) للفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط

الفعل المنتهي بـ	يضاف له	Example مثال
e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
y + (حرف ساكن)	ied + حذف (y)	carry → carried
y + (حرف متحرك)	+ ed	stay → stayed
(حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)	ed + يضاعف الحرف الأخير	stop → stopped

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn how to talk about his/her favorites - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يتحدث عن الأشياء المفضلة
1. Help your child learn how to use "to + inf." to express purpose - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يستخدم "to + inf" للتعبير عن الهدف من القيام بفعل شيء
2. Help your child learn how to use the past simple tense - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط

B. Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة تحفظ كما هي مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
buy	bought	get	got
leave	left	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	make	made
feed	fed	do	did

لاحظ أن : يتم استخدام [verb to be] في زمن الماضي كالآتي :

I / He / She / It / فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't

We / They / You / فاعل جمع → were / weren't

Key words كلمات دالة

in the past في الماضي
ago منذ
yesterday أمس
in + سنة ماضية [2000]

last → year السنة الماضية
last → month الشهر الماضي
last → week الأسبوع الماضي
last → Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mary listened to the teacher carefully to .... the lesson.
   a. understanding b. understands c. understand d. understood
2. My friend uses her computer .... her homework.
   a. to do b. does c. do d. did
3. She is going to travel to England .... learn English.
   a. to b. of c. on d. by
4. I went outside .... my neighbor.
   a. help b. helped c. to help d. helps
5. I went to the bookshop to .... a book.
   a. buy b. buys c. buying d. bought

6. I .... my galabeya to stay cool yesterday.
a. wear b. am wearing c. wore d. wears

7. Adam .... the party to catch the train last week.
a. leave b. left c. leaving d. leaves

8. Aser .... sad yesterday.
a. is b. are c. was d. were

9. He used a pen to .... his homework.
a. writing b. write c. writes d. wrote

10. My friend .... her new dress last night.
a. wear b. wears c. wore d. wearing

11. They .... to Sharm El-Sheikh last summer.
a. go b. going c. goes d. went

12. I .... the football match yesterday.
a. enjoys b. enjoyed c. don't enjoy d. enjoy

13. My parents gave me a new story to .... it.
a. read b. is reading c. reads d. reading

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

1. Ali .... (watch) TV yesterday.
2. I .... (drink) tea with milk yesterday.
3. He goes to the market to .... (buying) some rice.
4. I went to the cinema and .... (watch) the new film yesterday.
5. She used the internet to .... (doing) a project.
6. I go to the bedroom .... (for) sleep.
7. Fareeda .... (is) in the park last night.

( ) ( )

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Samar and Aya are in the park today. ☐
2. Samar is wearing a red shirt. ☐
3. Aya is wearing a hat on her head. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1. Noha is doing a school ....
2. Galabeya is a long white ....
3. Galabeya is made from ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sara uses a pen .... her essay.
   a. writing b. to write c. write d. of writing
2. They .... some new books to read last week.
   a. buying b. buy c. buys d. bought
3. Galabeyas have .... but they are hidden.
   a. gloves b. crowns c. sleeves d. pockets
4. Reem is wearing .... on her hands.
   a. gloves b. belts c. trainers d. glasses

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Galabeyas are	☐ a. read books.
2. We went to the park	☐ b. to get good grades.
3. Hazem studied hard	☐ c. traditional Egyptian clothes.
4. They went to the library to	☐ d. my school.
	☐ e. to play with our friends.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. dress – striped – a – I – have.

....

2. want – do – What – you – know – to ?

....

3. the kitchen - I - a cake - went to - make - to.

....

4. a racket - Tarek - tennis - bought - play - to.

....

6 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Sandy. I like to wear comfortable clothes. I like to wear cotton dresses. Cotton is soft and comfortable. In winter, I wear a scarf, gloves and a coat to keep warm. I like to wear sneakers when I go to the park.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Sandy likes to wear .... clothes.
   a. modern b. comfortable c. cheap d. traditional
2. The word "keep" in the text means ....
   a. cut b. leave c. stay d. take

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Sandy wear to keep warm ?

....

4. Why does Sandy like cotton clothes ?

....

7 Punctuate the following.

why did Tarek make a suit

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Clothes

Guiding elements :

- made from cotton
- sleeves

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

(_) (_)

Lesson 3

- The Elves and the shoemaker
- Pronunciation
- Math



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

elves	أقزام (شخصيات خيالية)	perfect	ملائم / مثال	happy	سعيد
honest	أمين / مخلص	leather	جلد	beautiful	جميل
kind	طيب / عطوف	shoemaker	صانع أحذية	delicious	لذيذ
tired	متعب	poor	فقير	little	صغير / قليل

Extra vocabulary

wife	زوجة	meal	وجبة	kindness	عطف
money	نقود	tonight	الليلة	amazed	مندهش
workshop	ورشة عمل	quickly	بسرعة	enough	كاف
surprised	مندهش	amazing	رائع - مدهش	new	جديد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يصدق	believed	cut out	يقطع	cut out
dance	يرقص	danced	pay	يدفع	paid
describe	يصف	described	leave	يترك / يغادر	left
			hide	يختبئ	hid

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work hard	يعمل بجد	sit down	يجلس
pair of	زوج من	all over the land	من شتى بقاع الأرض
call to	ينادي على	find out	يكتشف
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	once upon a time	ذات مرة (في يوم من الأيام)
for the night	لمدة ليلة واحدة	try on + clothes	يقيس ملابس

لاحظ أن كلمة (elves) مفردها (elf) ويعني (قزم) وهو مخلوق خيالي مدبب الأنف

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A shoemaker and elves	wife - poor	The shoemaker and his wife were very poor.
	cut - leather	The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.
	elves	The shoemaker and his wife saw two little elves that made the beautiful shoes.
	new - thank	The shoemaker and his wife made new clothes to thank the elves.

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The Elves and the Shoemaker الأقزام وصانع الأحذية

The Beginning

Once upon a time, a kind and **honest**[1] shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very **poor**[2], but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

One night, the shoemaker was in his **workshop**[3]. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the **leather**[4] now and make the shoes in the morning."

The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.



في يوم من الأيام، كان يعيش صانع أحذية طيب وأمين في مدينة مع زوجته. لقد كانوا فقراء للغاية، ولكن كانوا سعداء. كان صانع الأحذية يعمل بجد لكنه لم يكن لديه مال.

وذات ليلة، كان صانع الأحذية في ورشة العمل الخاصة به وقال "يا إلهي، لدي فقط جلد يكفي لزوج واحد من الأحذية. لكني متعب جدا لصنعه الليلة. سأقطع الجلد الآن وأصنع الحذاء في الصباح".

فقام صانع الأحذية بتقطيع الجلد وذهب للفراش.

[1] أمين
[2] فقير
[3] ورشة عمل
[4] جلد
[5] مدهش

The Middle

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an **amazing**[5] pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them ?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

في الصباح التالي، لم يصدق صانع الأحذية ما رآه عيناه. فنادى زوجته كي تأتي مسرعة إلى ورشة العمل. فقال صانع الأحذية "انظري إلى هذا الحذاء!" كان يوجد على منضدته زوج مدهش من الأحذية. نظرت زوجته بدهشة وقالت "إنه جميل. هل صنعته؟" فقال "لا يا عزيزتي، لا لم اصنعهم."

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture and read the text.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص

Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such amazing shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" **He tried on**[6] the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife," go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a delicious meal. "I will just **cut out**[7] the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must **find out**[8] who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us."

[6] قام بقياس
[7] يقطع
[8] يكتشف
[9] اختبأ
[10] الأقزام
[11] يشكر
[12] رقص
[13] الجلوس
[14] جميع أنحاء الأرض

ثم دخل إلى المحل رجل وقال "لم أر قط مثل هذا الحذاء المدهش. هل يمكنني أن أقيسه؟" فقام بقياس الحذاء وقال "إنهم ملائمين لي." ودفع لصانع الأحذية ثمنه. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية" بسرعة، اذهب واشتري المزيد من الجلد." ذهب صانع الاحذية لشراء المزيد من الجلود. وعندما وصل إلى البيت كانت قد أعدت الزوجة له وجبة لذيذة. فقال "سأقطع الجلد ثم آتي لتناول الطعام". فقطع صانع الأحذية الجلد لزوجين من الأحذية وغادر ورشة العمل لهذه الليلة. وفي صباح اليوم التالي، فوجئ صانع الأحذية وزوجته برؤية زوجين من الأحذية الجميلة في ورشة العمل. فقالت زوجة صانع الأحذية "يجب أن نعرف من يصنع هذه الأحذية. لنختبئ الليلة ونرى من يساعدنا."

The End



That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then **hid**[9]. They were very surprised to see two little **elves**[10]! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must **thank**[11] the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

The next night, the elves found their new clothes. They were so happy that they **danced**[12] around the workshop before **sitting down**[13] to make more shoes.

Soon, people came from **all over the land**[14] to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

في تلك الليلة قام صانع الأحذية بتقطيع الجلد ثم اختبأ. لقد أصيبوا بالدهشة عندما رأوا اثنين من الأقزام الصغار! بدأ الأقزام بصنع الأحذية وسرعان ما صنعوا زوجين آخرين من الأحذية الجميلة. فقالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "يجب أن نشكر الأقزام. دعنا نصنع لهم ملابس جديدة." وفي الليلة التالية وجد الأقزام ملابسهم الجديدة، وكانوا سعداء جدًا حتى أنهم رقصوا في ارجاء ورشة العمل قبل أن يجلسوا ليصنعوا المزيد من الأحذية. وسرعان ما أتى الناس من كل أنحاء الأرض لشراء أحذية صانع الأحذية. لم يعد هو وزوجته فقراء وعاشا في سعادة أبدية.

Make logical inferences.
قم بعمل استنتاجات منطقية

Learn 1. How did the elves feel with the new clothes?
- They were very happy.

Practice 2. What did they give the elves for their kindness?

(_) (_)

Remember

What's an adjective ? ما هي الصفة؟

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتي بعد (verb to be)

- He is a kind and honest shoemaker.

III Phonics

The pronunciation of verbs ending with (-ed) in the past simple tense.

كيفية نطق (-ed) في نهاية الفعل المنتظم في زمن الماضي البسيط.

كيفية نطق (ed) فى نهاية الأفعال



إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد الأصوات التالية

تنطق / t /	تنطق / d /	تنطق / Id /
/p/ , /k/ , /ʃ/ , /f/ , /s/ , /tʃ/	/b/ , /g/ , /m/ , /v/ , /z/ , /n/ , /ð/ , /ʒ/ , /r/ , /dʒ/ , /l/ , /ŋ/ , /vowel/ صوت متحرك	/t/ , /d/

/t/	
/p/	chopped
/k/	worked walked asked
/f/	laughed
/s/	fixed dressed promised
/ʃ/	washed
/tʃ/	watched

/d/	
/l/	called
/m/	climbed
/n/	cleaned
vowel	played enjoyed slowed carried
/r/	delivered
/v/	lived

/Id/	
/t/	tasted waited painted counted invited wanted
/d/	needed tidied studied

Notes for parents

- Help your child to know what an adjective is.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف ما هي الصفة

(__) (__)

Notice :

① كلمة [live] تنتهي بحرف [e] ولكنه لا ينطق بل آخر صوت ننطقه هو / v /.
② كلمة [laugh] تنتهي بـ [gh] ولكننا ننطقهم كصوت / f / .
③ كلمة [climb] تنتهي بحرف [b] ولكنه صامت لا ينطق بل آخر صوت ننطقه هو / m / .



Pop Quiz on Phonics ▶ **Read and write.**

cleaned - lived - needed - studied - washed - worked

/d/	/t/	/Id/
cleaned	....	....
....	....	....

IV Math

Multiply multi-digit numbers

☆ **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

1 Multiply multi-digit numbers. ضرب أعداد أكثر من رقم

- 10 × 10 = 100
- 30 × 20 = 600
- 50 × 50 = 2500
- 38 × 24 = 912

2 Multiplication. Word problem.

Nora makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week. How many hats can she make in 48 weeks ?

The solution : 48 × 25 = 1200



Pop Quiz on Math

1 Multiply.

1. 10 × 30 = ...
2. 32 × 45 = ...
3. 24 × 56 = ...
4. 21 × 41 = ...

2 Read, think, and solve.

For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order ?

The solution : .... × .... = ...

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My shoes are made of ....
   a. plastic b. leather c. glass d. wood
2. My teacher .... kind and honest.
   a. has b. is c. have d. were
3. The .... makes us bags and shoes.
   a. doctor b. engineer c. farmer d. shoemaker
4. Last week, she .... a new dress for the party.
   a. buys b. bought c. buy d. buying

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The shoemaker	☐ a. he had no money.
2. The shoemaker worked hard, but	☐ b. to make shoes.
3. We use leather	☐ c. makes amazing shoes.
4. The elves made	☐ d. very happy.
	☐ e. beautiful shoes.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. made - delicious - The - a - meal - wife.

....

2. shoes - every - Who - night - made - the ?

....

3. workshop - around - danced - The elves – the.

....

4. cut - the leather - The - can - out - shoemaker.

....

4 Punctuate the following.

the shoemaker and his wife are thankful

....

Lessons 4&5

▶ Writing

▶ Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

smart	أنيق	checked	على شكل مربعات	tie	رابطة عنق (كرافتة)
school uniform	زى مدرسى	feast	عيد	Mexico	دولة المكسيك
short-sleeved	قصير الكم	pale	فاتح	sombrero	قبعة من الجوخ (مكسيكية)

Extra vocabulary

trousers	بنطلون	celebration	احتفال	style	نمط
colorful	ملون	vest	سترة	silver	فضة
bright	زاهى / لامع	linen	كتان	leaflet	منشور / نشرة

II Listening and Reading

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Student A



I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

أنا حقًا أحب الزى المدرسى الخاص بنا. كل منا يرتدى قميص أبيض ذو كُم قصير. وترتدى الفتيات جيبة زرقاء اللون والأولاد بنطلون أزرق اللون. علينا جميعًا أن نرتدى جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلد سوداء. إن الجو ليس باردًا جدًا هنا، ولكن عندما يكون باردًا يمكننا أن نرتدى السترة الزرقاء الخاصة بنا.

Student B



At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

فى المدرسة، أرتدى قميص أزرق فاتح وبنطلون أزرق غامق. علينا أن نرتدى رابطة عنق يوميًا. لونها أزرق غامق وعليها خطوط لونها أزرق فاتح. الفتيات فى مدرستى أيضًا يلبسون قميص أزرق فاتح اللون ولكن لا يرتدون بنطلون، فهم يرتدون جيبة بها مربعات زرقاء وبيضاء. الفتيات غير مضطرين أن يرتدن رابطة العنق.

• Help your child read the text and learn about the school uniform. • ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن الزى المدرسى

Student C

Our school uniform is really smart.
We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie.
We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.



الزى المدرسى الخاص بنا حقًا أنيق. علينا أن نرتدى قميص أبيض ورابطة عنق حمراء. ونرتدى جيبة لونها رمادى داكن وجاكيت أزرق.

Student D

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.



- فى مدرستى يختلف الأولاد عن الفتيات فى الزى المدرسى. يرتدى الأولاد شورت لونه أخضر فاتح وجوارب خضراء طويلة. نحن نرتدى قميصًا أبيض ولدينا سترة حمراء داكنة اللون نرتديها عندما يصبح الجو بارد. الزى المدرسى لأختى مختلف فهى ترتدى جيبة زرقاء وتى شيرت أصفر اللون.

Student E

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. I like my uniform!

- الزى المدرسى الخاص بنا هو جيبة زرقاء داكنة للفتيات أو شورت أزرق داكن للأولاد، قميص قطنى أزرق فاتح وجوارب بيضاء وحذاء أسود. عندما يكون الجو باردًا نرتدى سترات لونها أزرق داكن أو معاطف. أنا أحب الزى المدرسى الخاص بى!

III Language Focus

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way :
عندما نستخدم صفات، نضعهم بهذه الطريقة :

1 Size مقاس	2 Age العمر	3 Color اللون	4 Material المادة الخام	Noun الاسم
big	old	green	cotton	dress

- I wear a cotton shirt.

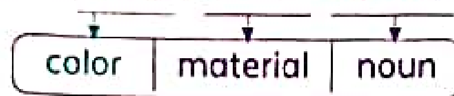
material	noun
المادة الخام	الاسم

• Help your child know how to use adjectives.
ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم الصفات

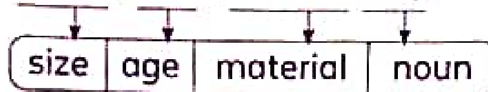
(_) (_)

◂ تستخدم [commas] الفواصل السفلية [,] بين أكثر من صفة عند ترتيب الصفات.

- She likes wearing white, cotton clothes.



- She bought a small, new, leather bag.





Pop Quiz on Language

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She wore a .... dress.
   a. green, cotton b. cotton, green c. cotton green d. cotton green,
2. He had to wear an ....
   a. orange, old hat b. old, orange hat c. old, hat orange d. hat, old, orange
3. Dad bought me a .... galabeya.
   a. new, white b. white, new c. cotton, new d. cotton, white

IV Writing skill

How to write a description of your favorite clothes.
كيفية كتابة وصف للملابس المفضلة بالنسبة لك.

- My favorite clothes are .... — الملابس المفضلة بالنسبة لي هي ....
- I have a ...., which is .... — أنا لدي .... ، والتي تكون ....
- I also like .... — أنا أيضًا أحب ....
- They are my favorite because .... — هذه الملابس مفضلة بالنسبة لي لأنها ....

My favorite clothes are shorts and T-shirts. I have a small, new, leather bag, which is light blue. I also like linen skirts. They're my favorite because they are comfortable.

· Help your child learn how to write a description of his/her favorite clothes.
· ساعد طفلك في تعلم كيفية الكتابة عن وصف الملابس المفضلة بالنسبة له

Read and learn clothes of different countries.


Japan اليابان


India الهند


Finland فنلندا

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

What is the Mexican hat called ? ماذا تسمى القبعة المكسيكية؟

Clothes in Mexico الملابس في المكسيك



These girls are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts and celebrations.

هؤلاء الفتيات يرتدين الفساتين المكسيكية التقليدية. انظرا إنها ملونة للغاية. هناك الكثير من الخطوط الملونة على الفساتين. ترتدي الفتيات في المكسيك فساتين مثل هذه خلال الأعياد والاحتفالات.



Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

الفتيات المكسيكيات يحبون الألوان الزاهية. حتى عندما لا يحتفلون، فإنهم يرتدون ملابس زاهية وملونة.



People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero - it's a traditional Mexican hat.

يرتدي الناس في المكسيك قبعات لحماية وجوههم من أشعة الشمس. هذه تسمى سومبريرو - إنها قبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.



There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

هناك الكثير من الأشكال المختلفة لقبعة السومبريرو. بعضها بها خطوط، وبعضها ملون جدًا. حتى أن البعض عليه ذهب وفضة.

Notes for parents

- Help your child to read and learn about clothes in Mexico.
- Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الملابس في المكسيك
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. She has a .... skirt.
   a. cotton, red b. red, cotton c. cotton, new d. cotton, big
2. The girl bought a .... new hat.
   a. small b. green c. old d. cotton
3. I like your .... style. You look great.
   a. terrible b. smart c. bad d. plastic
4. The sombrero is a traditional Mexican ....
   a. skirt b. hat c. jacket d. dress

2 Read and match [A] with [B].

[A]	[B]
1. He wears a short-	☐ a. in the winter.
2. My tie is	☐ b. in the summer.
3. The girls and boys have	☐ c. different uniforms.
4. We wear sweaters	☐ d. sleeved shirt.
	☐ e. light blue.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Girls in Mexico are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. They wear them during feasts and celebrations. Mexican girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. It is called sombrero. It's a traditional Mexican hat. There're lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have got stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have got gold and silver on them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a. girls b. dresses c. feasts d. stripes
2. People in Mexico wear .... to protect their faces from the sun.
   a. gloves b. hats c. dresses d. shirts

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is a sombrero ?

....

4. What are the different styles of a sombrero ?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. are - My - clothes - shirts - cotton - favorite.

....

2. green, - She - dress - wears - cotton - a new,.

....

3. wearing - These - Mexican - dresses - are - girls.

....

4. leather - He - black, - shoes - made - new,.

....

5 Punctuate the following.

we wear jackets when it's cold

....

6 Write a paragraph of about FORTY [40] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Clothes in Mexico

Guiding elements :

- colorful
- sombrero

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 **Reading Comprehension**

Make logical inferences from the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

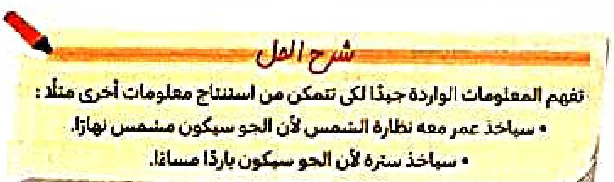
التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى وضع استنتاج منطقى لبعض المعلومات وقد تكون الإجابة غير موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيدًا لأن الإجابة قد تكون غير موجودة بشكل مباشر فى النص وتكون استنتاج للمعلومات الواردة.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

I'm Omar. I need to pack my suitcases for my holiday tomorrow. I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum. I need to pack my sunglasses to wear them during the day. I need to pack my sweater to wear it in the evenings. I'll need my sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot.



1. Do you think it can be cold in the evenings ?
   - Yes, because he needs to pack his sweater.
2. Is it sunny during the day ?
   - Yes, because Omar will wear sunglasses during the day.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

1. Do they have any clothes to wear when it gets cold ?

....

2. Do the boys and girls have the same uniform ?

....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (الملابس فى المكسيك) و (الزى المدرسى الخاص بك) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Clothes in Mexico	Write the meaning : ملون .... زاهى / لامع .... قبعة .... أنماط .... عيد .... فضة	Complete the sentences : 1. There are lots of different .... of sombrero. 2. Mexican dresses are very .... 3. Mexican girls love .... colors. 4. The sombrero is a traditional Mexican	Write paragraphs using the sentences : "Clothes in Mexico" ....
Your school uniform	جيبة .... بنطلون .... حذاء .... زى موحد .... سترة .... برتدى	1. I really like our school .... 2. The girls wear a blue .... 3. We wear black, leather .... 4. When it gets very cold, we wear a	"Your school uniform" ....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٠ جملة].

1 My favorite clothes

My favorite type of clothes is the dress[1]. It's blue[2]. It has two pockets[3]. I love wearing it in parties[4]. I also love wearing a crown on my head for parties[5].

2 School uniform

In my school, everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt[6]. We wear white socks and black leather shoes[7]. I wear a tie[8]. It's dark blue with light blue stripes[9]. My brother wears a white cotton shirt[10].

3 Egyptian traditional clothes

Many men in Egypt wear the galabeya[11]. Galabeya is made of cotton[12]. Galabeya is a big white robe[13]. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned[14]. It has hidden pockets[15].

4 Clothes in Mexico

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun[16]. They wear a sombrero[17]. It's a traditional Mexican hat[18]. Girls wear traditional Mexican dresses[19]. There are lots of colorful stripes on their dresses[20].

(__) (__)

TEST YOUR SKILLS



How do I look ?



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

remembers - need - exciting - bring - remember

Mom: We (1) .... to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

Ali : OK, I need to pack my swimming shorts because our friends have a lovely pool, don't they ?

Mom: Yes, and (2) .... your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

Ali : Will I need to (3) .... my galabeya ?

Mom: No, you won't.

Ali : That's (4) .... !

My Language

2 Read and complete with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. We wear .... (cotton, new, black) trousers.
2. I bought swimming shorts to .... (wearing) in the summer holiday.
3. He went to the bakery to .... (buys) some bread.
4. Last week, we .... (visit) our grandpa.

My Writing

3 Write a text message to your friend of about (30-40) words about the galabeya.

....

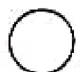
....

....

....

My Project

4 Make a leaflet about traditional clothes in your country.

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك. 

Review on Unit 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

T-shirt	تى شيرت
sunglasses	نظارة شمس
coat	معطف
scarf	وشاح
sweater	سترة
sneakers	حذاء رياضى
necklace	قلادة
pajamas	بيجامة
elves	أقزام
honest	أمين / صادق
shoemaker	صانع أحذية
smart	أنيق
uniform	زى موحد
short-sleeved	قصير الكم
stripes	خطوط طولية [مخطط]
sombrero	قبعة من الجوخ [سومبريرو]

Phonics

كيفية نطق (ed) فى نهاية الأفعال

ed

تنطق / t /	تنطق / d /	تنطق / Id /

إذا انتهى الفعل بأحد الأصوات التالية

/ t /	/ d /	/ Id /
/p/ . /k/ /ʃ/ . /f/ /s/ . /tʃ/	/b/ . /g/ /m/. /v/ /z/ . /n/ /ð/ . /ʒ/ /r/ . /dʒ/ /l/ . /ŋ/ /vowel/ صوت متحرك	/t/ . /d/
/k/ asked	/r/ delivered	/t/ tasted

Language

1 Infinitive of purpose.

١. استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

to + inf.

◂ تستخدم [to + inf.] للتعبير عن الغرض أو ذكر السبب.

▸ - They went to the library to finish their homework.

- Injy used a pen to write her essay.

2 The Past Simple Tense.

٢. زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

▸ - We played football yesterday.

- He bought a new coat last week.

Test 5 on Unit 3

• نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Marwa is wearing as a princess. ☐
2. Marwa has a crown on her head. ☐
3. Marwa is wearing black gloves on her hands. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1. Our school .... is really smart.
2. We have to wear a white ....
3. Girls wear a dark gray ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sherif bought a new suitcase .... on holiday.
   a. takes   b. to take   c. takes   d. take
2. The .... of the galabeya are long so we don't get sunburned.
   a. pockets   b. colors   c. sleeves   d. stripes
3. The shoemaker made .... shoes.
   a. leather, small   b. small, leather
   c. leather, black   d. leather, new
4. My dad's galabeya is made of ....
   a. plastic   b. wood   c. cotton   d. paper

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. We need to pack our	☐ a. by water.
2. The shoemaker uses leather	☐ b. at school.
3. I wear a blue shirt	☐ c. suitcases.
4. I wear a tie with	☐ d. light blue stripes.
	☐ e. to make shoes.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

I live in Sohag. Many men wear the galabeya. It's a long robe. It's made from cotton. It's usually white. The sleeves are long. There're pockets in it, but they are hidden. We can wear galabeya for Eid.

My father bought a galabeya to wear for Eid. My sister bought a spotted dress and a striped skirt. Our school uniform is smart. We wear a white shirt and blue trousers. In winter, we wear a dark, blue sweater. In summer, we wear blue shorts.

(_) (_)

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "long" is the opposite of ....
   a. tall b. huge c. short d. enormous
2. My sister's dress is ....
   a. spotted b. striped c. plane d. black

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the writer wear at school in winter?
   ....
4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. in – He – lives – a town – his wife – with.
   ....
2. sunglasses – to – protect – my eyes – I – need.
   ....
3. popular – in – is – very – Egypt – Galabeya.
   ....
4. tomorrow – will – It – be – sunny – very.
   ....

7 Punctuate the following.

they lived happily ever after

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Our school uniform

Guiding elements:

- striped tie
- blue trousers

....

....

....

....

Test 6 on Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). (المنيا / مغاغة ٢٠٢٣)

1. The galabeya is a modern clothing. ☐
2. The galabeya is made from cotton. ☐
3. The galabeyas have hidden pockets. ☐

2 Listen and complete. (القاهرة / النزهة ٢٠٢٣)

1. My favorite type of clothes is the ....
2. It has two long ....
3. I love wearing galabeya in the ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She .... an email to her friend yesterday.
   a. send b. sent c. sends d. sending
2. Mazin wants .... a new car.
   a. buy b. buying c. to buy d. bought
3. People wear hats to .... themselves from the sun.
   a. damage b. destroy c. protect d. sail
4. Dresses are types of ....
   a. sports b. meals c. clothes d. teams

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The girls wear (الأقصر ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. from cotton.
2. The shoemaker is (سوهاج / البلينا ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. from milk.
3. Two little elves (بورسعيد / شرق ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. blue skirts.
4. My galabeya is made (الدقهلية / المنزلة ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. kind and honest.
	☐ e. helped the shoemaker.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money. One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning", he said. The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The shoemaker was a .... man.
   a. big   b. kind   c. hot   d. small
2. The shoemaker cut the .... to make shoes.
   a. leather   b. bed   c. shop   d. town

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did the shoemaker live ?

....

4. Who lived with the shoemaker ?

....

(الإسماعيلية / القصاصين ٢٠٢٣)

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. at school – do – What – you – wear ? (القاهرة / الشروق ٢٠٢٣)

....

2. smart – Our – uniform – is – school – really. (أسيوط / أبو تيج ٢٠٢٣)

....

3. makes – shoemaker – The – in his – shoes – workshop. (الجيزة / أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)

....

4. your – are – clothes, – favorite – What – Mona ? (القاهرة / وسط القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

....

7 Punctuate the following.

there are many types of clothes

....

(كفر الشيخ / قلين ٢٠٢٣)

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements. مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your favorite clothes

Guiding elements :

- What are your favorite clothes ?
- Why do you like them ?

....

....

....

....

(المنيا / مطاي ٢٠٢٣)



STOP HERE !

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

▶ **Listen and choose the correct answer.** استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. People in Mexico wear hats to .... their faces. [heat – protect – see]
2. The .... is a traditional hat. [watch – bracelet – sombrero]

B. Language Functions

▶ **Read and complete the dialogue.** اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة.

pack – goggles – exciting

Mom : Nour, we need to (1) .... our suitcases for the holiday.

Nour : It's so (2) .... I will pack all my clothes.

Mom : Yes, and remember your (3) ....

Nour : Will we go swimming ?

Mom : Yes of course.

C. Vocabulary and structures

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. She wears a .... around her neck.
   a. necklace b. bracelet c. dress
2. Remember to take your .... to protect your eyes.
   a. sunglasses b. hat c. T-shirt
3. I went to the market .... some vegetables.
   a. buy b. buys c. to buy
4. I like going to the library to .... stories.
   a. read b. reads c. reading
5. Sameh studies hard .... the exam.
   a. to pass b. passing c. passed



Review 1

General Revision & Exercises on Units 1,2&3

مراجعة عامة وتدريبات على الوحدات ١، ٢، ٣

Revision

I Vocabulary

Unit 1

coconuts	جوز الهند	seed	بذرة	shopping list	قائمة تسوق
limes	اللِّيم (ليمون حامض)	recipe	وصفة طهى	beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا
pineapples	أناناس	ingredients	مكونات	molokhia	ملوخية
giant	عملاق	castle	قلعة	syrup	شراب

Unit 2

sailing	إبحار	jigsaws	لعبة تكوين الصور	nightmare	كابوس
karate	كاراتيه	tennis court	ملعب تنس	athlete	لاعب رياضى
kung fu	كونج فو	football pitch	ملعب كرة قدم	special needs	احتياجات خاصة
taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو	table tennis	تنس الطاولة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
squash rackets	مضارب الإسكواش	swimming goggles	نظارة السباحة	club	نادى

Unit 3

sweater	سترة	crown	تاج	leather	جلد
pajamas	بيجامة	gloves	قفازات	feast	عيد
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	sleeve	كُم	pale	فاتح
spotted	منقط	elves	أقزام	sombrero	قبعة مكسيكية
striped	مخطط	shoemaker	صانع أحذية	school uniform	زى مدرسى
belt	حزام	workshop	ورشة عمل	colorful	ملون

II Language Focus

Unit 1

a - an - some - any

- نستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفرد المعدودة التى تبدأ بصوت ساكن.
- نستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفرد المعدودة التى تبدأ بصوت متحرك.
- نستخدم "some" مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة فى الإثبات وفى حالة العرض أو الطلب.
- نستخدم (any) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة فى النفى والاستفهام.

- Are there any tomatoes? - Would you like some oranges?

Unit 2

Comparative adjectives

Regular adjectives	happy	→	happier than
	tall	→	taller than
Irregular adjectives	good	→	better than
	bad	→	worse than

- Talking about things we do or don't do well.

التحدث عن أشياء نفعلها أو لا نفعلها بطريقة جيدة.

great at رائع فى
good at جيد فى
bad at سيئ فى
→ [inf. + ing] / noun

Unit 3

1 Infinitive of purpose. استخدام [المصدر + to] للتعبير عن الغرض.

to + inf. → He went to the club to play tennis.

2 The past simple tense.
→ inf. + d/ed/ied
→ التصريف الثانى للأفعال غير المنتظمة

3 When we use adjectives, we put them in this way.

عندما نستخدم صفات، نضعهم بهذه الطريقة.

1 Size مقاس	2 Age العمر	3 Color اللون	4 Material المادة الخام	Noun الاسم
big	old	green	cotton	dress

General Exercises on units 1, 2 & 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

1. I had a nice dream. ☐
2. The air was black and toxic. ☐
3. My little brother had to go to hospital. ☐

2 Listen and complete. السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. Jack went to the .... to sell his cow.
2. Jack met an .... man on his way.
3. The old man had special ....

B. Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

A. 1. He is kind and .... All people love him.
   a. ugly   b. lazy   c. honest   d. angry

2. I had an awful .... I dreamed that I lost my cat!
   a. jigsaw   b. nightmare   c. drink   d. food

3. Ali studied hard .... good marks.
   a. get   b. got   c. to get   d. getting

4. Is there .... salt in the kitchen?
   a. a   b. an   c. many   d. any

B. 1. My mom mixed the .... together to make basbousa.
   a. fruit   b. ingredients   c. vegetables   d. beans

2. John is .... at football than he is at tennis.
   a. good   b. better   c. best   d. bad

3. I wear new swimming .... for my swimming lessons.
   a. boots   b. goggles   c. rackets   d. court

4. I bought a .... skirt.
   a. white, cotton   b. cotton, white   c. cotton, old   d. cotton, small

(_) (_)

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان

(A)	(B)
1. Our school uniform	☐ a. in our garden.
2. Egypt is	☐ b. going to the zoo ?
3. We grow a lime tree	☐ c. is really smart.
4. How about	☐ d. a beautiful country.
	☐ e. go to the zoo ?

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. Junk food isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. Perhaps you love swimming or football. Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school. Not only is this good exercise, but it means there are fewer cars on the road and less pollution. Play games and **have fun** with your friends!

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. This text is about " .... ".
   a. Healthy life b. Traditional clothes
   c. Air pollution d. Food in Egypt
2. The underlined phrase "**have fun**" means ....
   a. study b. enjoy c. paint d. draw

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why shouldn't we eat junk food a lot ?

   ....

4. Mention two healthy habits we should do in the text.

   ....

C. Writing

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

1. you – Would – like – juice – some – orange ?

   ....

2. did – pack – What – for – you – the holiday ?

   ....

3. at - I'm - good - playing - squash.

....

4. eat - You - in - mustn't - classroom - the.

....

السؤال السابع في ورقة الامتحان

7 Punctuate the following.

what's Hamza's favorite food

....

السؤال الثامن في ورقة الامتحان

8 Write a biography of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Sports athlete

Guiding elements :

- win
- competitions

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

2

THEME

Myself and others









Unit 4 Looking after our world

الاعتناء بعالمنا

Aims of Unit Four : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف ...

- listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
  - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث، وأكتب عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة.
- learn about Elephantine Island.
  - أتعلم عن جزيرة الفنتين.
- use sentences in the past continuous.
  - أستخدم الجمل في الماضي المستمر.
- learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
  - أتعلم وأتحدث عن السياحة البيئية في مصر.
- learn how to say three consonants together.
  - أتعلم كيفية نطق ثلاثة أحرف ساكنة معًا.
- learn to correct spelling mistakes.
  - أتعلم تصحيح الأخطاء الإملائية.
- write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.
  - أكتب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية في مصر.

(_) (_)

Lessons 1 & 2

- My visit to Elephantine Island
- What were you doing ?
- Language Focus



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

rare	نادر	calendar	تقويم	felucca	مركب شراعي / فلوكة
waterfalls	شلالات مياه	reign	عهد / فترة حُكم	mountain	جبل
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	sunset	غروب الشمس	island	جزيرة

Famous tourist places in Egypt أماكن سياحية مشهورة في مصر

Elephantine Island	جزيرة الفنتين	Temple of Philae	معبد فيلة
Aswan Botanical Garden	حديقة النباتات بأسوان	Aswan Museum	متحف أسوان
Nubian Village	القرية النوبية	Tombs of the Nobles	مقابر النبلاء

Extra vocabulary

fantastic	رائع	decorated	مزين - مزخرف	bright	ساطع/لامع
shape	شكل	museum	متحف	town	مدينة صغيرة
history	تاريخ	quiet = calm	هادئ	city	مدينة كبيرة
particularly	خاصة	traffic	حركة مرور	forest	غابة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر / ينتقل	traveled	understand	يفهم	understood
miss	يفقد/يفتقد	missed	find	يجد	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the oldest part of........	الجزء الأقدم	by boat	بالقارب
in fact	في الحقيقة	full of	ملئ بـ
go for long walks	يذهب للتمشية لمسافات طويلة	from the reign of	من عهد ....
through the desert	عبر الصحراء	See you soon!	أراك قريبًا!

Notes for parents

Did you know ? هل تعلم ؟

There are rocks from the White Desert. People often call them "chicken and mushroom" rocks!

يوجد صخور من الصحراء البيضاء. غالبًا ما يطلق عليها الناس "صخور الدجاج والفطر"!

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Elephantine Island	Aswan	Nagwa is on Elephantine Island in Aswan with her friends.
	full - history	Elephantine Island is full of history.
	rare - calendar	They found a very rare calendar.
	Nubian	They were walking in one of the Nubian villages.
	sunsets	The sunsets are fantastic from a felucca.

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Hi Dalia!

How are you ? **I'm missing you**[1] ! I'm on **Elephantine Island**[2] and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the "Elephantine" name-we think it's the **shape**[3] !

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. **In fact**[4], all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the **Aswan Museum**[5]. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very **rare**[6] **calendar**[7] from the **reign**[8] of Thutmose III.





[1] أفتقدك
[2] جزيرة إلفنتين
[3] شكل
[4] في الحقيقة
[5] متحف أسوان
[6] نادر
[7] تقويم
[8] فترة حكم / عهد

مرحبًا داليا! كيف حالك ؟ أنا أفتقدك ! أنا في جزيرة إلفنتين وهي المكان الأكثر روعة! إنها في أسوان وهناك يوجد الكثير لتراه. بالأمس، سافرت بالقارب إلى الجزيرة مع أصدقائي وكنا نحاول فهم اسم "إلفنتين" - نعتقد أنه الشكل !
جزيرة إلفنتين هي أقدم جزء في أسوان. في الواقع كل الجزيرة مليئة بالتاريخ. بعد ذلك، ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان. كنا ننظر إلى كل الأشياء القديمة من الجزيرة عندما وجدنا تقويمًا نادرًا جدًا من عهد تحتمس الثالث

But it's not only about **history**[9]- it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long **walks**[10]. There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The **sunsets**[11] are fantastic, particularly from a **felucca**[12]. We were walking in one of Nubian villages this morning. They have beautiful brightly **decorated**[13] houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the **Tombs**[14] of the **Nobles**[15] through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave. Can't wait to see you soon!

Nagwa

[9] تاريخ
[10] جولات
[11] غروب الشمس
[12] مركب شراعي
[13] مزين
[14] مقابر
[15] نبلاء

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. How was Nagwa traveling to the Elephantine Island?
- She was traveling by boat.

Practice 2. Why will Nagwa be sad?

III Language focus

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Usage: الاستخدام

- We use the past continuous for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر لنعبر عن شيء حدث واستمر خلال فترة زمنية في الماضي.

- - I **was watching** TV at 6 o'clock yesterday.

Formation: التكوين

1 Affirmative statements ١. الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد → was
We - You - They / فاعل جمع → were
→ [inf. المصدر + ing]

- - I **was listening** to the radio.
- They **were making** a cake.

Notes for parents

لكن الأمر لا يتعلق فقط بالتاريخ. إنه مكان جميل وهادئ. لا توجد حركة مرور، لذا فهي هادئة جدًا، والهواء نظيف. يمكننا المشي لمسافات طويلة. لا توجد غابات ولكن هناك الكثير من الأشجار، لذا فهي خضراء إلى حد كبير.
غروب الشمس رائع، وخاصة من المركب الشراعي. كنا نسير في إحدى القرى النوبية هذا الصباح. لديهم منازل جميلة مزينة بألوان زاهية. تناولنا الغداء هناك ونحن ننظر إلى النيل. غدًا هو صباحنا الأخير، لذلك سنذهب إلى مقابر النبلاء عبر الصحراء. سأكون حزينة جدًا للمغادرة. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك قريبًا! نجوى

(_) (_)

2 Negative statements ٢. الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد	→ was	+ not + [inf. المصدر + ing]	....
We - You - They / فاعل جمع	→ were		

- - I wasn't watching TV at 5 o'clock yesterday.
  - They were not studying math. They were playing football at 5 o'clock yesterday.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية :

was not → wasn't were not → weren't

3 Interrogative ٣. صيغة الاستفهام

A. Yes / No question : أ. السؤال بـ [هل] :

Was / Were + subject الفاعل + [inf. المصدر + ing] .... ?

- - Was she making lunch ?
  - * Yes, she was. * No, she wasn't.
  - Were they swimming in a lake ?
  - * Yes, they were. * No, they weren't.

B. Wh-question : ب. السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + was / were + subject الفاعل + [inf. المصدر + ing] .... ?

- - What were you doing at 5 am yesterday ?
  - I was doing my homework.
- - What was she doing yesterday evening ?
  - She was sleeping.

تذكر :

- عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ [e] غير منطوق [قبله حرف ساكن] تحذف [e] قبل إضافة [ing].

make → making take → taking

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة [ing] [بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد].

swim → swimming shop → shopping



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My brother and sister .... playing tennis at 11 am yesterday.
   a. are b. was c. is d. were
2. .... you working at 7 pm last night ?
   a. Were b. Are c. Was d. Is
3. Was he .... his homework ?
   a. do b. doing c. did d. does
4. What .... she doing at 10 am yesterday ?
   a. is b. are c. were d. was
5. They were .... to understand the "Elephantine" name.
   a. try b. tried c. trying d. tries
6. What .... your parents doing yesterday ?
   a. have b. did c. were d. do
7. She .... with her cat at 3 pm yesterday.
   a. playing b. plays c. play d. was playing
8. Was .... studying English yesterday ?
   a. you b. she c. they d. we
9. Nada was .... fatta for lunch at 2 pm yesterday.
   a. made b. make c. making d. makes
10. They .... swimming in the lake yesterday.
   a. were b. are c. do d. did
11. He .... eating an ice cream.
   a. wasn't b. don't c. didn't d. weren't
12. What were they .... at 4 pm yesterday ?
   a. does b. do c. doing d. did
13. Were .... playing basketball at 7 o'clock yesterday ?
   a. he b. she c. they d. I
14. A : Were you making cakes yesterday ? B : Yes, I ....
   a. was b. is c. does d. were

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Last month, they went to Aswan. ☐
2. They visited the pyramids. ☐
3. Elephantine Island took its name from its shape. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The children were .... football in the park.
   a. played b. plays c. play d. playing
2. What .... the girl watching yesterday?
   a. was b. were c. are d. does
3. We .... our house yesterday, it's very nice.
   a. found b. decorated c. left d. waited
4. This calendar is from the .... of Thutmose III.
   a. home b. reign c. class d. island

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. We can go to the Tombs	☐ a. the oldest part of Aswan.
2. What were you	☐ b. through the Nile.
3. We can go on a felucca	☐ c. of the Nobles through the desert.
4. Elephantine Island is	☐ d. did you see?
	☐ e. doing at 9 pm yesterday?

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are a lot of wonderful places in Egypt. Aswan is one of these places. Aswan is a beautiful and calm place. There isn't much traffic, so it's quiet and the air is clean. There are no forests but there are lots of trees so it's quite green.

Last summer, I visited Aswan with my family. We went to Elephantine Island by boat. It's a fantastic place. Elephantine Island is full of history.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**wonderful**" means ....
   a. dark b. ugly c. amazing d. bad

2. There are lots of .... in Aswan so it's green.

a. forests b. trees c. cars d. buses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

4. When did the writer and his family visit Aswan ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – from – The sunset – a felucca – fantastic.

....

2. they – traveling – were – How ?

....

3. they – music – Were – to – listening ?

....

4. full – history – is – Island – Elephantine – of.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

where did Yara go

....

7 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Elephantine Island

Guiding elements :

- fantastic place
- full of history

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- Eco-tourism
- Pronunciation



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	local people	سكان محليين
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	wildlife	الحياة البرية	environment	البيئة

Extra vocabulary

exciting	مثير / ممتع	journey	رحلة (طويلة)	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
historical	تاريخي	monuments	آثار	comfortable	مريح
carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون	pollution	تلوث	local culture	الثقافة المحلية
diving	رياضة الغطس	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو	oasis	واحة	project	مشروع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
damage	يدمر/يتلف	damaged	drive	يقود	drove
preserve	يحافظ	preserved	pay	يدفع	paid

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

create ... from	ينتج ... من	learn about	يتعلم عن
pros and cons of ...	مميزات وعيوب ..	look after	يعتني بـ
travel by ...	يسافر بـ ...	That sounds good!	هذا يبدو جيداً!

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Eco-tourism	environment	Eco-tourism looks after the environment.
	travel - plane	Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane.
	local hotels	Eco-tourists stay in small, local hotels.
	wildlife - projects	Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife projects.

Tip !
Eco : means relating to the environment. بيئي : هي تعني متعلق بالبيئة

II Listing script

What is eco-tourism ?


Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a **tour guide**[1] in Hurghada. Tell us about **eco-tourism**[2], please. What is it ?


Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very **exciting**[3]. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.


How does it help the environment and people ?


Eco-tourists don't like to travel by **plane**[4] because of the pollution planes cause. They travel by **train**[5], **on foot**[6], or by bike.


I see. Where do they stay ?


They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or **pay**[7] to stay in people's houses.


What do they do when they travel ?


They like to learn about local **wildlife**[8] projects and local **culture**[9].


Can you give me an example ?


Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, **preserving**[10] the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can **dive**[11] and how they can be with the animals.


That sounds very good ! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

(1) مرشد سياحي
(2) السياحة البيئية
(3) ممتع
(4) طائرة
(5) قطار
(6) سيرا على الأقدام
(7) يدفع
(8) حياة برية
(9) ثقافة
(10) حفظ
(11) يغوص

(_) (_)

⭐ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.



A tourist is diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef.

سائح يغوص في البحر الأحمر بالقرب من الشعاب المرجانية.



Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village.

واحة سيوة للسياحة والقرية البيئية التابعة لليونسكو.

1. Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people.

السياحة البيئية فكرة مدهشة. إنها تعتني بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.

2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause.

لا يحب السياح البيئيون السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذى تسببه الطائرات.

3. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

يقيم السياح البيئيون في فنادق محلية صغيرة أو يدفعون مقابل الإقامة في منازل الناس.

4. They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

يحب السياح البيئيون التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

5. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the coral reefs.

هنا في مصر، لدينا بعض المشاريع الرائعة التى تعتنى بالشعاب المرجانية.

6. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive.

يأتي السائحون إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون أين يمكنهم الغوص.

• Help your child read the sentences and learn.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويتعلم

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Tourism
السياحة

Good things
الأشياء الجيدة

1. Tourism gives jobs for local people.
توفر السياحة فرص عمل للسكان المحليين.
2. Tourism helps people learn about new cultures.
تساعد السياحة الناس في التعرف على ثقافات جديدة.

Bad things
الأشياء السيئة

1. Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
تنتج السياحة الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون من الرحلات الجوية.
2. Tourism damages the natural environment.
تقوم السياحة بتدمير البيئة الطبيعية.
3. Tourism damages the historical places or monuments.
تُحدث السياحة تلف بالأماكن التاريخية أو الآثار.

Eco-tourism
السياحة البيئية

Pros إيجابيات

1. It helps the environment.
تساعد البيئة.
2. It helps to protect the wildlife.
تساعد في حماية الحياة البرية.
3. It doesn't cause much pollution.
لا تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Cons سلبيات

1. It's not as comfortable as normal tourism.
ليست مريحة كالسياحة التقليدية.
2. There are limited places you can reach without taking a plane.
توجد أماكن محدودة بمكنك الوصول إليها بدون طائرة.



Notes for parents
- Help your child read and identify the good things and bad things about tourism.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة عن السياحة
- Help your child read and identify the pros and cons of eco-tourism.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على مميزات وعيوب السياحة البيئية

(__) (__)

III Phonics

How to say three consonants together

كيف نقوم بنطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معًا

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Some words are hard to say because there are three consonants together

str		scr		thr	
strawberry	فراولة	scratch	خدش	throne	عرش [كرسي الملك]
string	خيط	screw	مسمار	throat	حنجرة
street	شارع	screen	شاشة	three	رقم ثلاثة
strong	قوي	scream	يصرخ	throw	يلقي / يرمي
				through	خلال/عبر



Pop Quiz on Phonics

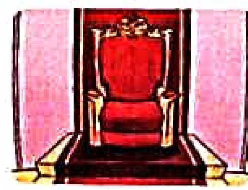
1 Look and write the missing sounds.

1. 

___ ing

2. 

___ een

3. 

___ one

2 Read and circle the words that start with three consonants together.

The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.

• Help your child read and learn about consonants.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الحروف الساكنة

IV Learn to correct spelling mistakes.

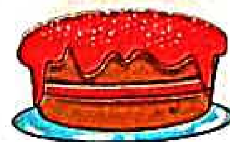
Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



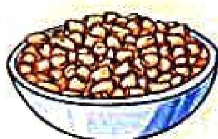
milk لبن



chocolate شوكولاتة



cake كعكة/ تورتة



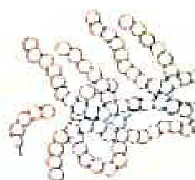
beans فول



ice skating التزلج على الجليد



lake بحيرة



pearls لؤلؤ



belt حزام

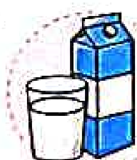


sneakers حذاء رياضي



Pop Quiz on spelling mistakes

1 Read and tick [✓] the correct spelling.

1. 

milk ☐
milc ☐

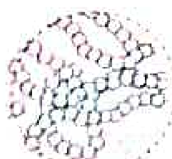
2. 

cakke ☐
cake ☐

3. 

beans ☐
beanc ☐

2 Look and correct the word.

1. 

perls
....

2. 

chokolate
....

3. 

sneacers
....

Notes for parents

- Help your child look and read the words.
1. Ask your child to read and tick (✓) the words with the correct spelling.
2. Ask your child to look at the pictures and correct the spelling mistakes.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ الكلمات.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمات ذات الهجاء الصحيح
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويصحح الأخطاء الهجائية.

( ) ( )

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Eco-tourism is a bad idea. ( )
2. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. ( )
3. Normal tourism damages the natural environment. ( )

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... helps people learn about new cultures
   a. Diving b. Pollution c. Tourism d. Wildlife
2. The tour guides .... about eco-tourism at 3 pm yesterday.
   a. talking b. talk c. were talking d. talks
3. Where .... the tourists diving yesterday?
   a. are b. were c. do d. have
4. Eco-tourism helps to protect the ....
   a. pollution b. wildlife c. journey d. gases

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Tourism damages historical	( ) a. the Red Sea near a coral reef.
2. Traveling by planes creates	( ) b. places or monuments.
3. A tourist was diving in	( ) c. to many countries.
4. Tourism is very important	( ) d. help Egypt.
	( ) e. too much carbon dioxide.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. do – stay – Where – they – Hurghada – in ?

....

2. reef – near – like to – dive – Eco-tourists – a coral.

....

3. tourism – normal – as comfortable – isn't – Eco-tourism – as.

....

4. don't – Eco-tourists – like to – plane – by – travel.

....

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tourism is very important to a lot of countries. On the one hand, it gives jobs to local people. It helps tourists learn about new cultures. On the other hand, it can damage the environment. It creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places. People should try eco-tourism. It looks after wildlife, monuments and local people.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Plane journeys cause a lot of ....
   a. pollution   b. population   c. natural   d. station
2. Tourism gives local people ....
   a. food   b. drink   c. clothes   d. jobs

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can tourism damage?

....

4. Why should people try eco-tourism?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

how does tourism help egypt ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Pros and cons of eco-tourism

Guiding elements :

- normal tourism
- local people

....

....

....

....

Lessons 4&5

▶ Taba : My favorite eco-resort
▶ Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	hiking	التنزه على الأقدام
eco-lodges	نُزل بيئية [بيوت صغيرة صديقة للبيئة]	camp	معسكر
eco-holiday	عُطلة/ إجازة بيئية	eco-resort	منتجع سياحى بيئى
flyer	نشرة إعلانية	excellent	ممتاز
structure	بناء / مبنى	fascinating	رائع/خلاب

Extra vocabulary

Taba	مدينة طابا	eco-destination	وجهة بيئية	opinion	رأى
ibex	وعل [ماعز جبلى/برى]	valley	وادى	activities	أنشطة
friendly	ودود	fantastic	رائع	hut	كوخ
building	مبنى	main heading	عنوان رئيسى	Sinai	محافظة سيناء
camping	تخييم [إقامة معسكر]	diving	غوص	sub-heading	عنوان فرعى
round	مستدير				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	find	يجد	found
hike	يتنزه	hiked	come	يأتى	came

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

example of	مثال على	for a great holiday	لعطلة رائعة
talk to	يتحدث إلى	take part in	يشارك في

Tip !
An eco-destination is a place you are going to which is good for the environment. This is because people there look after the environment.
الوجهة البيئية هى المكان الذى ستذهب إليه وهو مفيد للبيئة وهذا لأن الناس هناك يعتنون بالبيئة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Swimming and .... are water sports.
   a. running   b. boxing   c. diving   d. hiking
2. I like taking part in exciting .... like camping and hiking.
   a. films   b. activities   c. concerts   d. parties
3. Hurghada is a/an .... in Egypt.
   a. valley   b. hiking   c. flyer   d. eco-resort

II Listening and Reading

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Why is Taba good for eco-tourism?

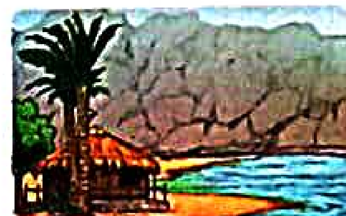
Eco-tourism in Egypt

Taba is an **excellent**[1] example of a part of Egypt where **eco-tourism**[2] works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic **wildlife**[3] in Taba, like the Nubian **ibex**[4], and **rare**[5] birds. This is very good for the **eco-tourists**[6] because they can go and enjoy the environment.

The local people are very **friendly**[7], so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating!

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, **hiking**[8], and camping. They can stay in camps and **eco-lodges**[9].

You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!



Camp in Sinai, Egypt



Nawamis structure - Sinai, Egypt

[1] ممتاز
[2] سياحة بيئية
[3] حياة برية
[4] ماعز جبلي
[5] نادر
[6] سياح بيئيين
[7] ودود
[8] تنزه
[9] نزل بيئية

Notes for parents

تُعد طابا مثالًا ممتازًا لجزء من مصر حيث تعمل فيه السياحة البيئية بشكل جيد. يمكنك أن تجد هناك الوديان والجبال والصحراء والبحر. يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا مثل الوعل النوبي، والطيور النادرة. هذا جيد جدًا للسياح البيئيين لأنهم يستطيعون الذهاب والاستمتاع بالبيئة. السكان المحليون ودودون للغاية، لذا يمكن للسياح البيئيين تناول وجبة معهم أو التحدث معهم عن ثقافتهم. إذا كنت تحب التاريخ، فهناك الكثير في طابا. هناك قرية النواميس، وهي عبارة عن قرية من المباني مستديرة الشكل قديمة جدًا. إنها مباني رائعة! يمكن للسياح البيئيين في طابا الاستمتاع بالغوص والتنزه والتخييم. يمكنهم البقاء في المخيمات والنزل البيئية. يمكنك أن تجد كل شيء في طابا لقضاء عطلة رائعة!

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba

النشرة الإعلانية التي تعلن عن العطلة البيئية في طابا

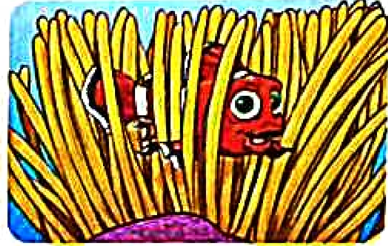
Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

السياحة البيئية المثالية في مصر



Meet the local people
Talk to them about their way of life.

قابل السكان المحليين
تحدث إليهم عن أسلوب حياتهم.



Enjoy the wildlife
Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt!
We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.

استمتع بالحياة البرية
تعال وشاهد أروع صور الحياة البرية في مصر! لدينا أسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.



Enjoy the local culture
Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old village.

استمتع بالثقافة المحلية
قم بزيارة قرية نواميس التي يبلغ عمرها ٦٠٠٠ عام.



Stay in our comfortable huts
They are cool and eco-friendly.

أقم في أكواخنا المريحة
فهي رائعة وصديقة للبيئة.



Take part in exciting activities
You can hike, swim, and dive.

شارك في أنشطة ممتعة
يمكنك التنزه والسباحة والغوص.

• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the flyer. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النشرة الإعلانية

(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The local people in Taba are very ....
   a. friendly b. bad c. busy d. angry
2. You can stay and talk .... people in Taba.
   a. in b. to c. on d. of
3. .... part in exciting activities in Taba.
   a. Taking b. Takes c. Took d. Take
4. There's fantastic .... in Taba, like Nubian ibex and rare birds.
   a. sand b. rocks c. mountains d. wildlife

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Come and see the most	☐ a. comfortable huts.
2. Eco-tourism works	☐ b. with local people.
3. Tourists can have a meal	☐ c. fantastic wildlife in Egypt.
4. Stay in our	☐ d. well in Taba.
	☐ e. valleys and desert.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find **fantastic** wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex, and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment.

The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "**fantastic**" means ....
   a. bad b. wonderful c. boring d. poor
2. The eco-tourists can talk to the local people about their ....
   a. culture b. books c. sports d. children

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

4. What kinds of animals can we find in Taba ?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. and – Eco-tourists – the environment – can – go – enjoy.

....

2. very – The – friendly – are – people – local.

....

3. can – in – Tourists – stay – eco-lodges.

....

4. in Taba – eco-friendly – The huts – cool – are – and.

....

5 Punctuate the following.

you can find everything in taba.

....

6 Write an email of about FORTY (40) words to your friend Tamer about perfect eco-tourism in Egypt. Your name is Gasser and your email address is gasser@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- local people
- fantastic wildlife

New message ×

Secure | https

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 **Reading Comprehension**

Demonstrate understanding of specific details

؟ تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

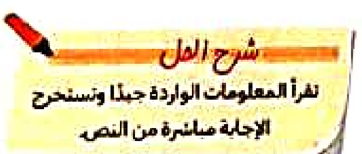
التحدى أجد صعوبة فى فهم تفاصيل معينة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا حيث تكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1 ◂ اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

I'm Nada. I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. We think it's the shape! Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.



1. Elephantine Island is in ....
   a. Fayoum b. Cairo (c. Aswan) d. Giza
2. Nada was traveling to the island with her ....
   a. family (b. friends) c. sisters d. mother
3. Elephantine Island is the .... part of Aswan.
   (a. oldest) b. longest c. fastest d. nearest

Step 2 ◂ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

1. You can find the Nubian .... in Taba.
   a. ibex b. fox c. dog d. cat
2. Eco-tourists can stay in .... and eco-lodges.
   a. hotels b. tents c. camps d. boats
3. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, ... , and camping.
   a. running b. hiking c. fishing d. flying

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [زيارتك لجزيرة فيلة] و [منتجع صديق للبيئة مفضل لديك] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
My visit to Elephantine Island	Write the meaning : هادئ .... متحف .... رائع .... تاريخ .... نادر .... مقبرة	Complete the sentences : 1. It's the most .... place in Aswan. 2. All the island is full of .... 3. We went to the Aswan .... 4. It's a beautiful and .... place.	Write paragraphs using the sentences : "My visit to Elephantine Island"
My favorite eco-resort	الغطس .... يقيم .... حياة برية .... ودود .... بيئة .... قرية	1. You can find fantastic .... in Taba. 2. The local people are very .... 3. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy .... 4. They can .... in camps and eco-lodges.	"My favorite eco-resort"

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٦ جملة].

1 My visit to Elephantine Island

Yesterday, I was traveling to Elephantine Island by boat with my family[1]. We were trying to understand its name[2]. Elephantine Island is the most fantastic place in Aswan[3]. It is the oldest part of Aswan[4]. You can do lots of things there[5].

2 Taba

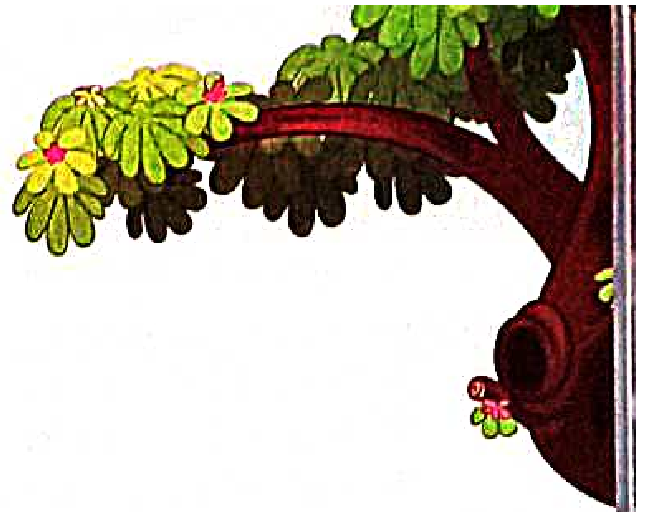
Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well[6]. We can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there[7]. We can find fantastic wildlife in Taba like the Nubian ibex[8]. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping[9]. We can find everything in Taba for a great holiday[10].

3 The pros and cons of tourism

Tourism is very important for Egypt[11]. Tourism gives jobs for local people[12]. It helps people learn about new cultures[13]. But there are some bad things about tourism[14]. It damages the natural environment[15]. It damages the historical places or monuments[16].

Review on Unit 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة فى ورقة واحدة



Vocabulary

felucca	مركب شراعي
forest	غابة
calendar	تقويم
island	جزيرة
tourist	سائح
monuments	آثار
oasis	واحة
lake	بحيرة
mountain	جبل
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
reign	عهد / فترة حكم
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
local	محلى
culture	ثقافة
eco-tourists	سياح بيئيين

Phonics

- / str /

strawtberry - street - string

- / scr /

screen - screw

- / thr /

three - throne - throw

Language

The Past Continuous Tense

1 Statements

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't
We - You - They / فاعل جمع → were / weren't
→ [inf. المصدر + ing] ....

- I was listening to music.
- We weren't making cakes.

2 Interrogative

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + was / were + subject الفاعل + [inf. المصدر + ing] .... ?

- What were you doing at 5 am yesterday?
  * I was swimming.

Test 7 on Unit 4

• نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
• التقسيمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Tourism isn't important to many countries.
2. Tourism gives jobs for tourists.
3. Tourism helps people learn about new cultures.

2 Listen and complete.

1. Last .... Rana visited the Elephantine Island.
2. Elephantine Island is in the .... River.
3. Rana went to Elephantine Island by ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When were .... listening to music?
   a. it b. she c. he d. you
2. A: Were they watching TV at midnight? B: No, they ....
   a. was b. wasn't c. weren't d. were
3. Tourists pay for rooms in ....
   a. parks b. caves c. hotels d. offices
4. In Egypt, we have projects looking after .... reefs.
   a. seeds b. leaves c. weeds d. coral

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. You can find	a. the coral reefs.
2. I like diving near	b. fantastic wildlife in Taba.
3. Elephantine Island is	c. to the island.
4. Eco-tourism isn't as	d. comfortable as normal tourism.
	e. the oldest part of Aswan.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Taba is a fantastic place in Egypt. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating!

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

(_) (_)

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Nawamis is a .... in Taba.
   a. city b. town c. island d. village
2. The underlined word "them" refers to ....
   a. local people b. eco-tourists c. local friends d. eco-lodges

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
   ....
4. Give two examples for things you can enjoy in Taba.
   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. you – to – Can't – wait – see - soon!
   ....
2. having – time – They – great - were – a.
   ....
3. island – is – The – full – history – of.
   ....
4. gives – local – Tourism – for – jobs – people.
   ....

7 Punctuate the following.

what are the pros and cons of eco-tourism

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A fantastic place in Egypt

Guiding elements :

- beautiful place
- had lunch

....
....
....
....

(__) (__)

Test 8 on Unit 4

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). (القاهرة / عين شمس ٢٠٢٣)

1. Yesterday, I went to Aswan. ☐
2. Elephantine Island is a fantastic place in Aswan. ☐
3. I went there by car. ☐

2 Listen and complete. (الأقصر ٢٠٢٣)

1. .... is important for Egypt.
2. Taba is a great .... for eco-tourists.
3. Eco-toursim works very .... in Taba.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Wael was .... TV at 10 pm yesterday.
   a. watch b. watches c. watching d. watched
2. She .... cooking lunch.
   a. do b. does c. was d. were
3. Tourism gives .... for local people.
   a. jobs b. jokes c. clothes d. food
4. Elephantine Island is full of ....
   a. Arabic b. history c. math d. science

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Traveling by planes (سوهاج / أخميم ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. are friendly.
2. The sunsets are fantastic (الشرقية / شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. the historical places.
3. Tourism damages (أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. causes pollution.
4. The local people (الغربية / غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. from a felucca.
	☐ e. helps the environment.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tourism is very important to Egypt. We all should help tourists when they come to Egypt. Tourism gives jobs to local people, so they can live happily as they earn much. It helps people learn about new cultures and old ones, so tourists learn about our amazing culture. When tourists visit Egypt, they like to visit Aswan to see interesting places there, like the Temple of Philae. They also like to go to Sharm El Sheikh to dive in the Red Sea.

( ) ( )

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about ....
   a. cultures b. tourism c. getting jobs d. diving in the sea

2. The Temple of Philae is in ....
   a. the Red Sea b. Sharm El Sheikh c. Cairo d. Aswan

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do tourists like to go to Sharm El Sheikh ?

....

4. What does tourism give to local people ?

....

[الفيوم / إبشواى ٢٠٢٣]

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. local – Tourists – culture – can – about – learn. [سوهاج ٢٠٢٣]

....

2. travel – did – How – they – Aswan – to ? [الجيزة / العمرانية ٢٠٢٣]

....

3. Taba – in – works – Eco-toursim – well . [قنا ٢٠٢٣]

....

4. doing – she – What – was – at home ? [الجيزة / الهرم ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Punctuate the following.

Aswan is in the south of egypt

....

[الإسماعيلية / فايد ٢٠٢٣]

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY [40] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The importance of tourism

Guiding elements :

- local people
- new cultures

....

....

....

....

[دمياط / الزرقا ٢٠٢٣]



STOP HERE !

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

▸ **Listen and choose the correct answer.** استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Elephantine Island is the .... part of Aswan. (newest – oldest – tallest)
2. All the island is full of .... (people – pictures – history)

B. Language Functions

▸ **Read and complete the dialogue.** اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة.

tourists – after – pollution

Ola : Eco-tourism is very important, isn't it ?

Adam : Sure. It looks (1) .... the wildlife.

Ola : Do (2) .... travel by planes ?

Adam : No. Because of the (3) .... that planes cause.

Ola : Where do eco-tourists stay ?

Adam : In camps and eco-lodges.

C. Vocabulary and structures

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The .... tell tourists where to stay.
   a. teachers b. guides c. doctors
2. I was .... my book at 10:00 last night.
   a. read b. reads c. reading
3. We should .... our monuments.
   a. destroy b. protect c. damage
4. They .... playing games at 8 yesterday.
   a. are b. was c. were
5. The cat was .... that wall in the morning.
   a. climbing b. climb c. climbs



(_) (_)



Unit 5 Jobs we do
الوظائف التى نقوم بها

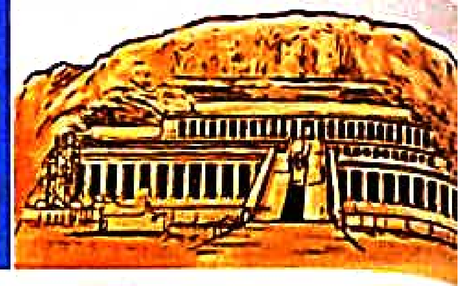
Aims of Unit Five : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الخامسة

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
  - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الوظائف فى مصر القديمة
- understand ecosystems. - أفهم الأنظمة البيئية
- practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
  - أتدرب على استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين
- practice using "must" to talk about obligation.
  - أتدرب على استخدام "must" بمعنى "يجب أن" للتعبير عن الإلزام
- understand and discuss a traditional tale.
  - أفهم وأناقش قصة تقليدية
- learn to say words with diphthongs.
  - أتعلم أن أقول كلمات بها أصوات (مدغمة)
- understand pie charts. - أفهم المخططات الدائرية
- write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
  - أكتب عن مزايا وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة
- make a poster about teamwork.
  - أصمم ملصق عن العمل الجماعى

Lesson 1

▶ Jobs in Ancient Egypt



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

fishermen	صيادون	scribe	كاتب	pharaoh	فرعون
female ruler	الملكة الحاكمة	hieroglyphs	الكتابة الهيروغليفية	trader	تاجر
grains	حبوب	paintings	لوحات مرسومة	craftspeople / craftsmen	الحرفيون
row	صف	records	سجلات		

Extra vocabulary

wheat	قمح	signs	رموز	expensive	غالي الثمن
corn	ذرة	fields	حقول	sandals	صندل (حذاء مفتوح)
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	wood	خشب	gold jewelry	مجوهرات ذهبية
flax	نبات الكتان	temple	معبد	medical school	مدرسة الطب
queen	ملكة	sculpture	تمثال منحوت	clay	صلصال
columns	أعمدة	medicine	دواء	cooking pots	أواني طهي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
weave	ينسج	weaved	keep	يحفظ	kept
use	يستخدم	used	spend	يقضي	spent

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

consist of	يتكون من	travel up and down the Nile	يبحر في النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا
work outside	يعمل بالخارج		
take care of = look after	يعتني بـ	write ... down	يدون

Notes for parents

Do you know ? هل تعلم ؟

More than 25 % of people in Egypt work in farming. Farming brings a lot of income to Egypt.

- أكثر من خمسة وعشرون بالمائة من السكان في مصر يعملون بالزراعة. تجلب الزراعة دخل كبير لمصر

(__) (__)

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Jobs in Ancient Egypt	farmers - crops	Farmers planted crops like wheat, corn and flax.
	craftsmen	The craftsmen used to weave clothes and make cooking pots.
	scribes	The scribes knew how to read and write well.
	basket - market	The women could weave baskets, make sandals and sell them at the market.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians used .... to write everything down.
   a. English b. hieroglyphs c. math d. Arabic
2. .... are very good at making things by their hands.
   a. Players b. Farmers c. Craftspeople d. Teachers
3. This gold ring is ...., I can't buy it.
   a. good b. cheap c. expensive d. smart
4. Wheat is a very useful kind of ....
   a. fruits b. vegetables c. grains d. meat
5. The carpenter needs .... to make chairs and beds.
   a. flax b. corn c. gold d. wood

II Listening and Reading

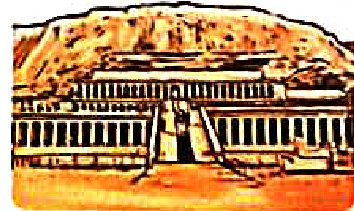
Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Jobs in Ancient Egypt
وظائف في مصر القديمة

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers.

لقد اجتهد الناس في مصر القديمة في العمل. كان لكل واحد منهم وظيفة. استطاعوا العمل كصيادين وخبازين وأطباء وتجار ولكن معظمهم عملوا كمزارعين.



Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, c. 1473-1458 BCE

• Help your child look at the picture and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص

Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

لقد عمل الفلاحين في الحقول التي بالقرب من منازلهم. قاموا بزراعة المحاصيل وعادة الحبوب مثل القمح والذرة والكتان. قاموا أيضًا بزراعة الخضروات والفواكه.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

كان الحرفيون المصريون القدماء جيدين جدًا أيضًا. فقد قاموا بصناعة لوحات ومجوهرات ذهبية وتماثيل منحوتة جميلة. كما اعتادوا على حياكة ملابس جميلة وصناعة أواني للطهي مزخرفة. عمل القليل من الناس في وظيفة الكتبة. كان يعرف الكتبة كيفية القراءة والكتابة جيدًا. لم تكن الكتابة المصرية سهلة التعلم. لقد قضى الكتبة العديد من السنوات في تعلم الكتابة الهيروغليفية وكان هذا التعلم باهظ الثمن.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful !

لقد عملت نساء المصريون القدماء بالمنزل واستطعن أيضًا العمل بالخارج. لقد قمن بطهي الوجبات وتنظيف المنزل، واعتنين بأطفالهن. استطاعت النساء نسج السلال، صناعة الخبز وصناعة الصنادل (الأحذية المفتوحة) واستطعن أيضًا بيعهم بالسوق. حتى انهم استطاعوا أن يصبحن فراعنة (حكام). حتشبسوت كانت ملكة مشهورة في مصر القديمة.

عرف الجميع في مصر القديمة أن العمل مهم للحياة، لذلك كان المصريون القدماء ناجحين للغاية.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. .... spent many years learning hieroglyphs.
a. Bakers b. Traders c. Scribes d. Fishermen

Practice 2. .... was important for life in Ancient Egypt.
a. Games b. Work c. Playing d. Swimming

3. Farmers worked in ....
a. fields b. homes c. hospitals d. offices

Read, look and learn.

People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.

- كان الأشخاص الذين يعملون بتلك الوظيفة أشخاص مهمين جدًا في مصر القديمة. كانوا يدونون كل شيء. قاموا بحفظ السجلات والوثائق للأشياء الهامة.



scribe

A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

- هي نظام كتابة يتكون من حوالي ٥٠٠ رمز مكتوبة في صفوف وأعمدة. استخدمها الناس في مصر القديمة.



hieroglyphs

People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.

- الذين قاموا بتلك الوظيفة كانوا يبحرون في النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا. كانوا يقومون ببيع وشراء أشياء مثل الذهب، الخشب، خيوط الكتان والحبوب.



trader

If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

- إذا كنت جيد في صناعة الأشياء، ستكون هذه وظيفة جيدة بالنسبة لك. قام الأشخاص في هذه الوظيفة بصناعة أشياء من الصلصال (الفخار) والخشب والذهب.



craftsman

Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.

- كان كلًا من الرجال والسيدات يستطيعون أداء تلك الوظيفة. كان يجب عليك الذهاب إلى المدرسة الطبية لتحصل على هذه الوظيفة. وكان يجب عليك أن تعتني بالمرضى وتصنع الدواء.



doctor

III Language Functions

1 To ask and answer about the job you want to do.

١. للسؤال والإجابة عن الوظيفة التي تريد القيام بها.

- Which job would you like to do? — أي وظيفة تريد أن تعمل بها؟
- I want to be a/an (job) .... — أريد أن أعمل (الوظيفة) ....



Which job would you like to do?

I want to be a craftsman. I like making beautiful pots from clay.



2 To ask and answer about the descriptions of jobs.

٢. للسؤال والإجابة عن وصف مهام الوظائف.

- What does a/an (name of a job) .... do? — ماذا يفعل (اسم الوظيفة) .... ؟



What does a scribe do?

A scribe writes everything down. He/She keeps records and lists for many important things.





Pop Quiz on Language Functions

▶ Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Which job	☐ a. write everything down.
2. A craftsman	☐ b. likes to make things.
3. Scribes	☐ c. would you like to do?
4. I want to be	☐ d. takes care of children.
	☐ e. a teacher.

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn how to ask and answer questions about jobs.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يسأل ويجيب أسئلة عن الوظائف

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Farmers could plant fruit, vegetables and ....
   a. scribes   b. grains   c. trains   d. jobs
2. Traders could travel .... and down the Nile.
   a. up   b. in   c. under   d. out
3. .... job would you like to have ?
   a. When   b. Who   c. Which   d. Where
4. Scribes kept .... and lists for many things in Ancient Egypt.
   a. pots   b. crafts   c. records   d. food

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Farmers were very important	☐ a. queen in Ancient Egypt.
2. Hatshepsut was a famous	☐ b. worked very hard.
3. People in Ancient Egypt	☐ c. care of my little brother.
4. My sister takes	☐ d. for Ancient Egypt's economy.
	☐ e. very successful !

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "........................ in Ancient Egypt".
   a. Festivals   b. Jobs   c. Museum   d. Jewelry

2. It was .... to learn Egyptian writing.
a. easy b. difficult c. simple d. bad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did farmers do in Ancient Egypt ?

....

4. Who made beautiful sculptures in Ancient Egypt ?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. learn – Egyptian – writing – wasn't – easy – to.

....

2. making – good – Craftsmen – are – at – things.

....

3. job – to have – Which – like – would – you ?

....

4. clay – from – pots – like – I – making.

....

5 Punctuate the following.

work was important in Ancient Egypt

....

6 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements :

- weave clothes
- traveled up and down

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2

▶ CLIL : Science
▶ Language focus



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

living things	كائنات حية	marine	بحري	rockpool	بركة مياه صخرية
ecosystem	نظام بيئي	non-living things	أشياء غير حية	seaweed	أعشاب بحرية

• Extra vocabulary

connection	علاقة / تواصل	menu	قائمة طعام	rainforest	غابة مطيرة
crab	سلطعون البحر (كابوريا)	natural world	عالم طبيعي	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
alive	على قيد الحياة	restaurant manager	مدير مطعم	boss	مدير
freshwater	مياه عذبة	rock	صخرة	hippo	فرس النهر
university	جامعة	sharp	حاد		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
survive	ينجو / يتعايش	survived	forget	ينسى	forgot
tidy up	يرتب / ينظم	tidied up	drive	يقود	drove
check	يفحص	checked			
prepare	يعد / يجهز	prepared			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

(be) connected	متصل - ذو صلة	on Earth	على كوكب الأرض
work together to	يعملون معًا لكي ...	such as	مثل

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
non-living	something that isn't alive شيء ليس على قيد الحياة
ecosystem	- the connection between living and non-living things العلاقة بين الكائنات الحية وغير الحية - all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place كل الحيوانات والنباتات والصخور و ما إلى ذلك في مكان ما

The River Nile is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river.
يعتبر نهر النيل أهم مصدر للمياه العذبة في مصر. يعيش الكثير من النباتات والحيوانات بالقرب من النهر أو بداخله

rockpool	a small area of water with rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc. مساحة صغيرة من الماء بها صخور وسلطعون البحر والأعشاب البحرية وما إلى ذلك.
living	something that is alive شيء ما على قيد الحياة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... things can grow.
   a. Non-living b. Living c. Dead d. Cold
2. A .... is a sea animal.
   a. cat b. panda c. crab d. camel
3. We get .... from the River Nile.
   a. fruits b. freshwater c. salt water d. colors
4. Plants need .... and water to make food.
   a. salt b. electricity c. sunlight d. sugar

II Listening and Reading

Are all ecosystems the same ? هل كل النظم البيئية متشابهة؟

Look, read and learn. انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

What is an ecosystem ? ما هو النظام البيئي؟


a marine ecosystem


a desert ecosystem


a freshwater ecosystem


a rockpool ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is connected[1]. This connection[2] between living[3] and non-living things[4] is called an ecosystem[5]. Ecosystems can be small, like

[1] متصل
[2] علاقة
[3] كائنات حية
[4] كائنات غير حية
[5] نظام بيئي

Notes for parents

كل شئ فى العالم الطبيعى متصل. تسمى هذه العلاقة بين الكائنات الحية وغير الحية بالنظام البيئى. يمكن أن تكون النظم البيئية صغيرة مثل

a **rockpool**[6], or they can be very big, like the **Amazon rainforest**[7]. The living things in a rockpool are fish, **crabs**[8], and **seaweed**[9].

The non-living things are **rocks**[10], water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

[6] بركة مياه صخرية
[7] غابات الأمازون المطيرة
[8] سلطعون البحر (كابوريا)
[9] أعشاب بحرية
[10] صخور

III Language Focus

1 The Present Simple Tense — ا. زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage : الاستخدام

◀ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق.

Formation : التكوين

1. Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل (بدون إضافات)

▶ - I want to be a teacher. - We play tennis after school.

He - She - It - اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + s or es

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s) → s
- أما التي تنتهي بـ (o, x, ss, ch, sh) يضاف لها (es) → es

- الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y):

▶ - He flies a plane.

- الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف له (s):

▶ - He plays volleyball every Friday.

2. Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

He - She - It - اسم مفرد + doesn't } + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

I - We - You - They - اسم جمع + don't } + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

▶ - I don't have sisters. - He doesn't play tennis.

◀ يمكن استخدام هذه الظروف مع المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين اليومي.

always دائمًا | usually عادة | often غالبًا | sometimes أحيانًا | never أبدًا

بركة المياه الصخرية، أو يمكن أن تكون كبيرة جدًا، مثل غابات الأمازون المطيرة. الكائنات الحية في بركة المياه الصخرية هي الأسماك وسلطعون البحر والأعشاب البحرية. الكائنات غير الحية هي الصخور والمياه والرمال وأشعة الشمس. كل هذه الأشياء تعمل معًا لإنشاء نظام بيئي. هناك الكثير من النظم البيئية المختلفة على الأرض.

2 Must / Mustn't ٢. يجب أن / يجب ألا

Usage : الاستخدام

- We use "must" to talk about something that we have to do.
- تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتحدث عن شيء يتعين علينا القيام به.
- We use "mustn't" when we aren't allowed to do something.
- تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) عندما لا يسمح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

Formation : التكوين

1. Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + must يجب أن + inf. (مصدر)

- I must do my English homework.

2. Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + mustn't يجب ألا + inf. (مصدر)

- We mustn't talk in the library.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My friend .... in Nubia .
   a. live b. lives c. living d. to live
2. Mona doesn't .... to school by bus.
   a. go b. going c. goes d. to go
3. Ali and Amr .... play football in the park.
   a. doesn't b. aren't c. don't d. haven't
4. Nehal must .... up the kitchen.
   a. tidy b. tidies c. tidied d. to tidy
5. You .... make a lot of noise in the hospital.
   a. must b. mustn't c. can d. doesn't
6. She is ill. She must .... the doctor.
   a. to see b. sees c. saw d. see
7. You mustn't .... lessons.
   a. skips b. skip c. to skip d. skipped

8. They .... go to school early.
 a. mustn't b. must c. doesn't d. aren't

9. You must .... your sister.
 a. helps b. help c. helping d. helped

10. Sara .... forget her book.
 a. must b. can c. mustn't d. is

11. We .... the bus to Cairo every morning.
 a. catch b. caught c. catches d. catching

12. We .... forget our books at school.
 a. must b. doesn't c. mustn't d. can

13. We .... games every weekend.
 a. plays b. play c. playing d. played

14. You mustn't .... in the class.
 a. eating b. eats c. to eat d. eat

15. Noha .... help her sick brother.
 a. must b. mustn't c. don't d. are

16. Mrs Soha doesn't .... us English.
 a. teaches b. teach c. teaching d. to teach

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the word[s] in the brackets.

تدريب تلقائي لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

Amir is a vet. He (1) .... (look) after elephants. He must (2) .... (makes) sure they are happy and healthy. He must (3) .... (prepares) their food. He (4) .... (mustn't) give them freshwater to drink. He must (5) .... (gives) them a bath. He (6) .... (mustn't) even clean their teeth !



A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه فى اسبوع واحد فقط



(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Everything in the natural world isn't connected. ☐
2. The connection between living and non-living things is an ecosystem. ☐
3. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... forget our books at school
   a. must b. doesn't c. mustn't d. can
2. A/An .... means all the animals, plants, rocks in a place.
   a. river b. living c. ecosystem d. non-living
3. Fish and .... are living things.
   a. crabs b. rocks c. sunlight d. sand
4. Mrs Soha doesn't .... us English.
   a. teaches b. teach c. teaching d. to teach

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Non-living is	☐ a. the bus every morning.
2. Noha catches	☐ b. walk on the grass.
3. The rockpool is a small	☐ c. do our homework.
4. We mustn't	☐ d. area of water.
	☐ e. something that isn't alive.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed.

The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "........................".
   a. Living things b. Sports c. Ecosystems d. Rainforests

2. .... are non-living things.

a. Rocks b. Fish c. Camels d. Crabs

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is an ecosystem ?

....

4. Give two examples of living things from the text.

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. living – Trees – are – things – animals – and.

....

2. forget – mustn't – hat – Ali – his.

....

3. sells – her flowers – She – market – at – the.

....

4. must - She - the - up - kitchen - tidy.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

ecosystem can be big or small

....

7 Write an email of about FORTY (40) words to your friend Omar about ecosystems. Your name is Hassan. Your email address is hassan@gmail.com. You friend's email address is omar@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What's an ecosystem ?
- Are all ecosystems the same ?

New message ×

Secure | https:

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- The Ant and the Grasshopper
- Pronunciation
- Math



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


buzzing
يطن - يصدر الطنين


fence
سور


boring
شيء ممل


grasshopper
الجندب النطاط (الجرادة)

Extra vocabulary

seasons	فصول السنة	ant	نملة	conversation	محادثة
butterflies	فراشات	fall	فصل الخريف	insects	الحشرات
however	ومع ذلك	suddenly	فجأة	spring	فصل الربيع
strange	غريب	lazy	كسول	sound	صوت (شيء)
shine	تشرق	relax	تسترخي	winter	فصل الشتاء

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
buzz	يطن - يصدر طنين	buzzed	reply	يرد	replied
harvest	يحصد	harvested	ignore	يتجاهل	ignored

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

full of flowers	مليء بالأزهار	have fun	يستمتع
rest against	يستريح مستندًا على	prepare for	يجهز لـ / يستعد لـ
knock on	يطرق / يقرع على	hop away	يقفز بعيدًا
look over	ينظر أعلى	come in	يدخل
carry on	يستمر في	on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The Ant and the Grasshopper	grasshopper	The grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.
	need – carry on	The ant needs to carry on with her work.
	winter – food	It's winter and the grasshopper doesn't have any food.
	work hard	It's fine to have fun but it's important to work hard, too.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The .... are buzzing all the day.
   a. ants b. bees c. cats d. flowers
2. The film is ...., so I stopped watching it.
   a. wonderful b. exciting c. boring d. interesting
3. Hamed built a strong .... to protect the garden.
   a. school b. fence c. factory d. hospital

II Listening and Reading

★ **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The Ant and the Grasshopper
النملة والجندب

The Beginning

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.



إنه فصل الربيع. تشرق الشمس وتمتلئ الحقول والحدائق بالأزهار لتأكل الحيوانات والحشرات. إنه يوم جميل. النحل يصدر طنين والفراشات تطير في ضوء الشمس. ومع ذلك يعمل النمل بجد.

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the story.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ القصة

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.



الجندب الكسول يقضي معظم وقته مسترخيًا. فهو لا يحب أن يعمل. اليوم، وهو يستريح متكأً على شجرة، سمع صوت غريب وأراد أن يكتشف ما هذا الصوت فنظر من فوق سور الحديقة.

The Middle

"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper. "Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun ?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.



يسأل الجندب قائلًا : "ماذا تفعلين أيتها النملة ؟" فترد النملة قائلة : "أنا أعمل" ثم يرد الجندب قائلًا : "لكنه يوم جميل". "لما لا تتوقفين عن العمل ونستمتع؟" ترد النملة قائلة : "شكرًا لكني أحتاج أن أواصل عمل".

"But working is so boring", replies the grasshopper. "Maybe", says the ant, "but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away.



يرد الجندب قائلًا : "لكن العمل ممل جدًا". ترد النملة قائلة : "ربما ولكنه شيء علينا جميعًا القيام به. يجب أن نفكر في المستقبل وليس اليوم فحسب." لم يفهم الجندب ولذلك فهو يقفز بعيدًا.

Soon, it is fall. The ant has worked hard and all her crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until she has harvested all the food and taken it inside for the winter.



وسرعان ما جاء فصل الخريف وقد عملت النملة بجد ونمت كل المحاصيل التي زرعتها بشكل جيد. لم تتوقف عن العمل حتى حصدت كل الطعام وخزنته بالداخل من أجل فصل الشتاء.

The End



Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door. "I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too".

وسرعان ما جاء فصل الشتاء و الجو باردًا جدًا. والجندب جائع. فلم يكن لديه أي طعام ولم يستطع أن يجد أي طعام. فجأة يتذكر الحديث بينه وبين النملة. ويذهب ويطرق باب النملة ويقول : "لقد فهمتك الآن يا نملة. لقد عملتِ والآن لديك طعام وأنا لم أعمل وأنا جائع الآن. ترد النملة قائلة : "ادخل. نعم إنه من الجيد أن نستمتع بوقتنا ولكن من المهم جدًا أن نعمل أيضًا بجد".

* The moral of the story.

It's important to work to prepare for the future.

من المهم أن تعمل لتستعد للمستقبل.

Make logical inferences.
قم بعمل استنتاجات منطقية

Learn 1. The grasshopper was wrong. Why?
- Because he was very lazy and it was important to work hard.

Practice 2. What's the moral of the story?

....

III Phonics

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

A Diphthongs [صوتين متحركين يكونان صوت واحد]

/aʊ/		/aɪ/		/ɔɪ/	
down	إلى أسفل/أدنى	Why	لماذا	boy	ولد
mouse	فأر	try	يحاول	noise	ضوضاء
town	مدينة	light	فاتح - ضوء	enjoy	يستمتع
brown	لون بني	buy	يشتري	point	يشير
loud	صاخب	eye	عين	toy	لعبة أطفال

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
• Help your child identify diphthongs.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الـ "Diphthongs".

B The suffix (-ist) (-ist) اللاحقة


dentist
طبيب أسنان


biologist
عالم أحياء


journalist
صحفي


pianist
عازف بيانو


scientist
عالم


receptionist
موظف استقبال

- The suffix (-ist) means someone who does something.
اللاحقة (-ist) تعني الشخص الذي يفعل شيئًا ما.
- We often use it in words for jobs. غالبًا ما نستخدمها في الكلمات الخاصة بالوظائف.


He's a biologist. إنه عالم أحياء.



She's a receptionist. إنها موظفة استقبال.


لاحظ : هناك بعض الكلمات يتم التعديل قبل إضافة (-ist).

piano → pianist   science → scientist



Pop Quiz on Phonics

1 Read and circle the different sound.

1. down – light – mouse
2. point – toy – town
3. loud – noise – brown
4. enjoy – loud – boy

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She's a ....
   a. journal   b. biology   c. journalist   d. science
2. She plays the piano very well. She's a ....
   a. receptionist   b. dentist   c. biologist   d. pianist
3. The word "........................" has the sound /aʊ/.
   a. buy   b. eye   c. light   d. brown
4. We add the suffix "........................" to the word "reception" to mean the job that he does.
   a. -ied   b. -ist   c. -ful   d. -less

Notes for parents

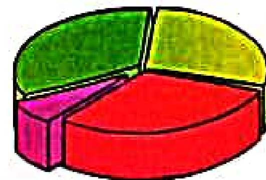
• Help your child know when we use the suffix (-ist).
- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف متى نستخدم اللاحقة (-ist).

IV Math

What is a pie chart ?

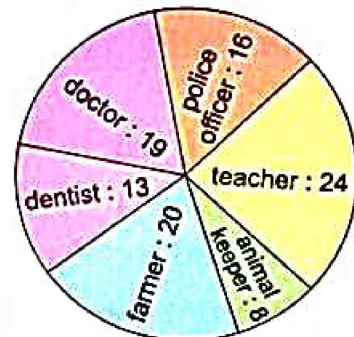
A pie chart is a way of showing information.

الرسم البياني الدائرى هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.



ex. - What is the most popular job ?

What job do you want to do ?	
police officer	16
teacher	24
farmer	20
animal keeper	8
dentist	13
doctor	19





Pop Quiz on Math

▶ Match the tables to the pie charts :

1.

Do you want to work indoors or outdoors ?	
indoors	7
outdoors	3

2.

Do you want to wear a uniform at work ?	
yes	2
no	8

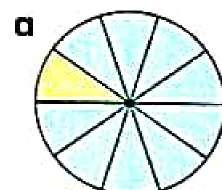
3.

Do you want to work with animals ?	
yes	1
no	9

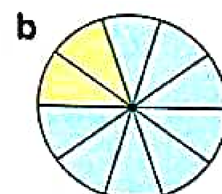
4.

Do you want to work in an office ?	
yes	5
no	5

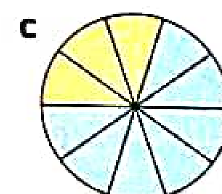
a



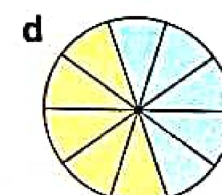
b



c



d



General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. The .... is working hard.
2. The ant needs to carry on with her ....
3. We must think about the ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Toka .... on the door before she entered.
   a. knocked b. understood c. came d. had
2. He doesn't .... to work.
   a. liked b. likes c. like d. to like
3. The ant is working hard to prepare .... winter.
   a. in b. for c. under d. against
4. I can't climb the garden .... because it is high.
   a. fence b. stairs c. table d. chair

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The bees are	☐ a. beautiful colors.
2. The butterfly has	☐ b. in winter.
3. My father is	☐ c. in summer.
4. It's very cold	☐ d. buzzing and working hard.
	☐ e. a journalist.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. flowers – full – The – gardens – are – of.

....

2. is – fine – It – to – fun – have.

....

3. garden – looks – He – over – the – fence.

....

4. strange – sound – The grasshopper – a – hears.

....

( ) ( )

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

It's spring. The sun is shining. The fields, and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence and finds an ant working. He asks the ant to play together, but the ant refuses because she has to work hard.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is "......................".

a. Working hard b. Playing c. Studying d. Relaxing

2. Buzzing is the sound of ....

a. butterflies b. ants c. grasshoppers d. bees

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who was lazy?

....

4. How does the grasshopper spend most of his time?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

it's important to think about the future

....

7 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Ants

Guiding elements:

- clever
- work hard

....

....

....

....

(__) (__)

Lessons 4 & 5

▶ Writing
▶ Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

operation عملية جراحية	teammate زميل في فريق العمل	countryside الريف
vet طبيب بيطرى	computer programmer مبرمج حاسوب	teamwork عمل جماعي
keen متحمس (شديد الاهتمام)	concert حفلة موسيقية	team فريق

Extra vocabulary

sick مريض	report تقرير	office job وظيفة مكتبية
young صغير السن (شاب)	injured مجروح - مصاب	science علوم
distance مسافة	computer games ألعاب كمبيوتر	experiment تجربة (معملية)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
mind	يمانع/يهتم	minded	dislike	يكره	disliked
scare	يخيف	scared	agree	يوافق	agreed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- get sick يمرض/يصاب بمرض
- I don't mind ! أنا لا أمانع !
- get out of bed ينهض من الفراش
- make friends يكوّن صداقات
- check on يفحص
- work out the best solutions يستنبط أفضل الحلول
- the aim of الهدف من
- the worst part of الجزء الأسوأ في
- I'm not keen on لست متحمسًا لـ
- solving problems حل المشكلات

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Rana and Sherif's jobs	animals	Rana works with animals.
	operation	If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very clean.
	keen on	Sherif isn't keen on being outside.
	solutions – team	Sherif works out the best solutions with his team.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My pet is sick. It needs a/an ....
   a. apple b. operation c. game d. chair
2. A .... helps animals get better.
   a. farmer b. vet c. teacher d. driver
3. The dogs .... me so I don't like playing with them.
   a. feed b. love c. scare d. leave

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or **injured**[1], I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people **bring**[2] their animals to me. If an animal needs an **operation**[3], the room has to be very, very clean.

On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to **check**[4] on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind! What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!



Rana is a vet.

[1] مصاب / مجروح
[2] يجلب / يحضر
[3] عملية جراحية
[4] يفحص
[5] متحمس لـ

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not **keen on**[5] being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.



Sherif is a computer programmer.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
صف العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What is the worst part of Rana's job?
- It's when an animal gets sick in the night and she has to get out of bed.

Practice 2. Why didn't Sherif want to work with animals?
....

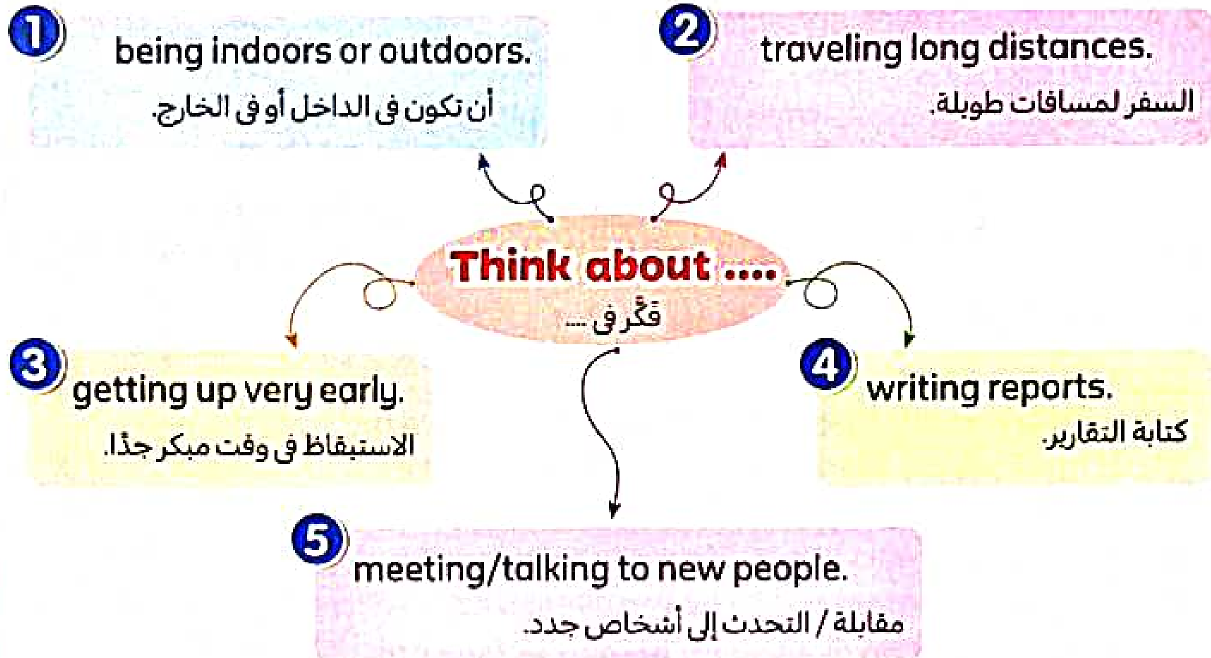
• Help your child to look at the pictures, listen and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص

اسمي رنا. أنا أعمل مع الحيوانات وأحب عملي. إذا كانت الحيوانات مريضة أو مصابة، فأنا أساعدها كي تتحسن. في بعض الأيام أعمل في الداخل ويحضر الناس حيواناتهم إلي. إذا احتاج حيوان إلى عملية جراحية، فيجب أن تكون الغرفة شديدة النظافة. في أيام أخرى، أذهب إلى منازل الناس أو مزارعهم لفحص الحيوانات. فمن الممكن أن تكون بعض الأماكن متسخة جدًا، لكنني لا أمانع! ما هو الجزء الأسوأ في الوظيفة؟ عندما يمرض حيوان ما أثناء الليل وأضطر إلى النهوض من السرير!

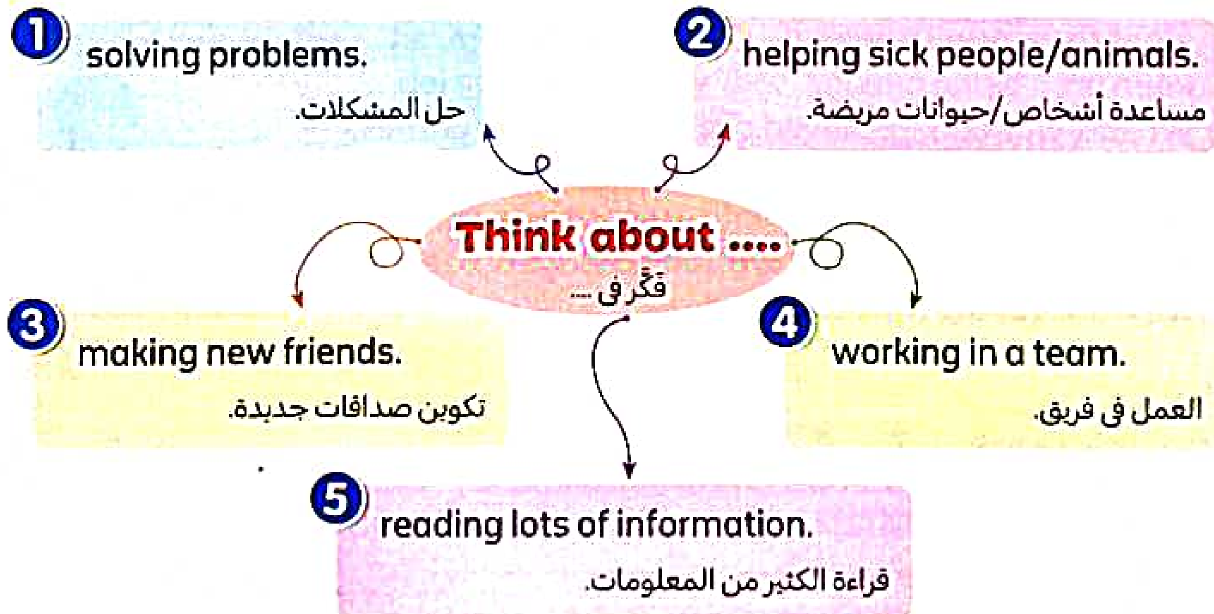
مرحبًا أنا شريف. عندما كنت صغيرًا، علمت أنني لا أريد العمل مع الحيوانات. إنهم يخيفونني! لست متحمسًا أن أكون بالخارج، لذلك أردت الحصول على وظيفة مكتبية. عندما كنت صغيرًا أحببت لعب ألعاب الحاسوب. أنا أيضًا أستمتع جدًا بحل المشاكل. لذا في عملي، أنا أقوم بكلاهما! أنا أيضًا أستمتع بالعمل مع أشخاص آخرين. هناك ١٦ فرد في فريقي. لا نتفق دائمًا، لكننا نتوصل إلى أفضل الحلول

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

• When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. عندما تفكر في وظيفة ما، من المهم أن تفكر في ما يعجبك وما لا يعجبك.



• It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. من المهم أيضًا التفكير فيما تجيده وما لا تجيده.



(__) (__)

III Writing skill

How to write about your future job
كيفية الكتابة عن وظيفتك المستقبلية

My future job وظيفتي المستقبلية

When I'm older, I want to be a .... because .... I think this is a good job for me because I like .... I'm good at .... and I enjoy .... I don't want to be a .... because I'm not good at .... Also, I don't really enjoy ....

عندما أكبر، أريد أن أكون .... لأنني .... أنا أعتقد أن هذه وظيفة جيدة بالنسبة لي لأنني أحب .... أنا جيد في .... وأستمتع بـ .... أنا لا أريد أن أكون .... لأنني لست جيدًا في .... وأنا أيضًا لا أستمتع حقًا بـ ....



Pop Quiz on Writing skill

▶ Write an email of about FORTY (40) words about your future job to your friend Aser. Your name is Moaaz and your email address is moaaz@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is aser@yahoo.com.

New message ×

Secure | https

From :

To :

Subject :

.........................,
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

• Help your child to learn how to write about his/her future job. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب عن وظيفته في المستقبل.

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Teamwork



1. I work in a **team**[1] in **science**[2] when we're doing an **experiment**[3].
أعمل في فريق في مادة العلوم عندما نجري تجربة معملية.



2. I work in a team when I'm playing football.
أعمل في فريق عندما ألعب كرة القدم.



3. I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.
أعمل في فريق عندما أساعد والدتي في المطبخ في المنزل.



4. I work in a team for the school **concert**[4].
أعمل في فريق من أجل الحفل الموسيقي المدرسي.

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the **aim**[5] of a football team is to win. You work with your **teammates**[6] to do this. You can't **win**[7] a football match by yourself!

عندما تعمل في فريق، فأنت تعمل مع أشخاص آخرين للقيام بشئ ما معًا. على سبيل المثال، هدف فريق كرة القدم هو الفوز. أنت تعمل مع زملائك في الفريق للقيام بذلك. لا يمكنك الفوز بمباراة كرة قدم بمفردك!

[1] فريق
[2] مادة العلوم
[3] تجربة معملية
[4] حفلة موسيقية
[5] هدف
[6] زملائك
[7] يفوز

(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. Reem works with ....
2. If animals are sick, Reem helps to make them ....
3. If an animal needs an .... , the room has to be very clean.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You must .... your teeth before going to bed.
   a. brushes b. brushed c. brushing d. brush
2. He .... do a lot of exercises. He is a lazy.
   a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. aren't
3. It's .... to think about working in a team.
   a. bad b. scary c. important d. wrong
4. A .... helps sick animals to get better.
   a. farmer b. vet c. programmer d. scribe

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Think about traveling	☐ a. problems.
2. I love solving	☐ b. I'm playing football.
3. I work in a team when	☐ c. kitchen at home.
4. I help mom in the	☐ d. long distances.
	☐ e. teamwork.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello, I'm Ahmed. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed didn't want to work with ....
   a. computers   b. science   c. animals   d. balls

2. The text is about Ahmed's ....
   a. family   b. job   c. favorite food   d. favorite sport

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

....

4. What do Ahmed and his team do?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. at - good - I'm - new - friends - making.

....

2. a - want - be - I - to - vet.

....

3. people - with - enjoy - I - working - other.

....

4. do - How - you - out - work - a solution?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

i'm playing football in a team

....

7 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your future job

Guiding elements:

- What would you like to do when you are older?
- What are you good at?

....

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas or pieces of information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى أجد صعوبة فى وصف علاقة بين شخصين، حدثين، فكرتين أو معلومتين.

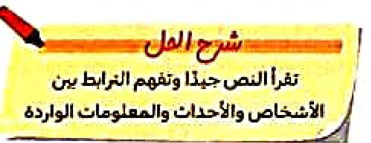
مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا أكثر من مرة للتمكن من فهم الترابط الموجود بين الأفكار والمعلومات الواردة فى النص.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers planted a lot of crops. Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. They kept records and lists for important things. Craftsmen were good at making things.



1. Why were scribes important in Ancient Egypt?
   - Because they kept records and lists for important things.
2. Where did farmers work?
   - They worked in fields near their homes.

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions:

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days, I work inside and people bring their animals to me. On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind!

1. How does Rana help animals?

   ....

2. Why does Rana go to people's houses or farms?

   ....

3. What does Rana work with?

   ....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (النظام البيئى) و (الوظائف فى مصر القديمة) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
	Write the meaning :	Complete the sentences :	Write paragraphs using the sentences :
Ecosystems	متصل .... بركة صخرية .... غابات مطيرة .... أعشاب بحرية .... صخور .... كوكب الأرض	1. Everything in the natural world is .... 2. Ecosystems can be small like a .... 3. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs and .... 4. The non-living things are ...., water, sand, and sunlight.	"An ecosystem" ....
Jobs in Ancient Egypt	الكتبة .... ذو مهارة .... مزارعين .... خباز .... حقول .... مجوهرات	1. Most people worked as .... in ancient Egypt. 2. Farmers worked in .... which were near their homes. 3. The craftsmen were .... 4. .... knew how to read and write well.	"Jobs in Ancient Egypt" ....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٠ جملة].

1 craftsman

My father is a craftsman[1]. I want to be a craftsman[2]. I like making beautiful pots from clay[3]. I'm good at making things[4]. I think it is a good job for me[5].

2 Ecosystems

Everything in the natural world is connected[6]. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool[7]. They also can be big, like Amazon rainforest[8]. Living and non-living things work together to make an ecosystem[9]. There are lots of different ecosystems[10].

3 Women's jobs in Ancient Egypt

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home[11]. They could work outside, too[12]. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children[13]. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market[14]. Hatshepsut was a famous queen in Ancient Egypt[15].

4 Teamwork

Teamwork is very important[16]. I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment[17]. I work in a team when I'm playing football[18]. You can't win a football match by yourself[19]! You work with your teammates to do this[20].

Review on Unit 5

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الخامسة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

trader	تاجر
scribe	كاتب
dentist	طبيب أسنان
records	سجلات
receptionist	موظف استقبال
ecosystem	نظام بيئي
grasshopper	جندب
operation	عملية جراحية
scientist	عالم
journalist	صحفي
teamwork	فريق عمل
ruler	حاكم
grains	حبوب
hieroglyphs	الكتابة الهيروغليفية
fishermen	صيادون

Phonics

- /aʊ/
  mouse - brown
- /aɪ/
  eye - light
- /ɔɪ/
  boy - toy

Language

1 The Present Simple Tense

He / She / It + (inf.) + s / es / ies
Subj. فاعل + doesn't + (inf.)

- She cuts the vegetables with a knife.
- She doesn't watch the TV.

I / We / You / They + inf.
Subj. فاعل + don't + inf.

- I drive to work at 10 am every day.
- They don't play football.

2 must / mustn't

- تستخدم (mustn't / must) بمعنى (يجب / لا يجب) لتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام.

Subject ► must / mustn't ► inf.

- - I must do my homework.
  - We mustn't talk in the library.

Test 9 on Unit 5

• نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. You don't work with people when you are in a team. ☐
2. The aim of a football team is to win. ☐
3. You can't win a football match by yourself. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1. Ancient Egyptian women worked at .... and could work outside.
2. Women could weave .... and bake bread.
3. One .... queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You .... use the cell phone when you drive.
   a. must b. can c. mustn't d. isn't
2. He .... his hands before eating.
   a. wash b. washes c. to wash d. washing
3. Ecosystem is the .... between living and non-living things.
   a. connection b. time c. distance d. road
4. Youssef plays the piano. He is a ....
   a. journalist b. pianist c. scientist d. biologist

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Traders bought and	☐ a. are friends.
2. The River Nile is	☐ b. sold things like gold.
3. What do we need	☐ c. to their hotels.
4. The ant and the grasshopper	☐ d. very important for Egypt.
	☐ e. to win the match ?

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or **injured**, I help to make them better. Some days, I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very, very clean. On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind !

I lived on a farm when I was younger, so I'm used to it, and I love the countryside. What's the worst part of the job ? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The general idea of the text is "Rana's ....".
   a. job   b. birthday   c. school   d. operation
2. The underlined word "injured" means ....
   a. strong   b. hurt   c. well   d. healthy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Rana live when she was younger ?
....
4. What's the worst part of Rana's job ?
....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. making – I – pots – like – from – clay.
....
2. important – is – Work – life – for – very.
....
3. resting – tree – against – is – He – a.
....
4. quiet – You – be – must – the library – in.
....

7 Punctuate the following.

i want to be a craftsperson
....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Traders in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements :

- travel up and down
- sell / buy goods

....
....
....
....

(__) (__)

Test 10 on Unit 5

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

(الأقصر ٢٠٢٣)

1. A vet works with animals. ☐
2. A vet helps animals to get sick. ☐
3. A vet loves the countryside. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

(القاهرة / المستقبل ٢٠٢٣)

1. My father is a ....
2. I love making beautiful pots from ....
3. I think it is a .... job for me.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She .... her homework alone.
   a. do b. doing c. does d. done
2. You .... park here. It is not allowed.
   a. must b. should c. mustn't d. can
3. .... grow different crops.
   a. Farmers b. Doctors c. Engineers d. Dentists
4. Football is my favorite ....
   a. meal b. subject c. sport d. recipe

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Farmers can plant fruit, (المنيا / سمالوط ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. is to lose.
2. Craftsmen made (الجيزة / كرداسة ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. is to win.
3. Ecosystems can be small, (قنا / نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. vegetables and grains.
4. The aim of a football team (المنوفية / منوف ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. beautiful paintings.
	☐ e. like a rockpool.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers were very important for Ancient Egypt. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

(_) (_)

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good, too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about " .... ".
   a. necklaces b. pyramids c. workers d. temples
2. .... were very important for Ancient Egypt.
   a. Doctors b. Drivers c. Vets d. Farmers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the Egyptian craftsmen make?
   ....
4. Where did the farmers work?
   ....

[السويس ٢٠٢٣]

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. by myself – can't – I – match – a football – win. [الفيوم / طامية ٢٠٢٣]
   ....
2. work – to – It's – important – hard. [الدقهلية / المطرية ٢٠٢٣]
   ....
3. helps – A vet – after – looks – animals – and. [القاهرة / الزيتون ٢٠٢٣]
   ....
4. live – Where – they – did – past – in the? [الإسماعيلية / فايد ٢٠٢٣]
   ....

7 Punctuate the following.

teamwork is very important

....

[الإسكندرية / المنتزه ٢٠٢٣]

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

The job of a vet

Guiding elements:

- helps animals
- countryside

....
....
....
....

[البحيرة / دمنهور ٢٠٢٣]



STOP HERE!

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

▶ **Listen and choose the correct answer.** استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. In Ancient Egypt, ... traveled up and down the Nile. (scribes – traders – pharaohs)
2. Traders bought and sold .... (grains – books – computers)

B. Language Functions

▶ **Read and complete the dialogue.** اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة.

pharaohs – sell – weave

A : What could women do in Ancient Egypt?

B : They could (1) .... baskets and bake bread.

A : Could they (2) .... them at the market?

B : Yes. They could even become (3) ....

C. Vocabulary and structures

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. They .... forget their books at school.
   a. must b. can c. mustn't
2. We mustn't .... in the library.
   a. eating b. eat c. eats
3. A .... makes pots from clay.
   a. pharaoh b. trader c. craftsman
4. You .... be quiet because dad is sleeping.
   a. mustn't b. can c. must
5. Scribes kept .... and lists for many things in Ancient Egypt.
   a. pots b. crafts c. records





Unit 6 What's the weather like ?

ما هي حالة الطقس ؟

Aims of Unit Six : الأهداف العامة للوحدة السادسة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about the weather. - أستمع، أقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن الطقس.
- read and listen to a short story about a heat wave. - أقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.
- use adverbs of frequency with the present simple. - أستخدم ظروف التكرار في زمن المضارع البسيط.
- understand a dialog about water pollution. - أفهم محادثة عن تلوث المياه.
- learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words. - أتعلم كيفية التمييز بين أصوات /p/ و /b/ والحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.
- write an account of extreme weather. - أكتب تقرير عن الطقس القاسي.
- research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather. - أبحث وأصنع منشور حول ما يجب القيام به في الطقس القاسي.

(_) (_)

Lesson 1 ▸ The weather



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


cloudy ملبد بالغيوم


windy عاصف


snow جليد


rainbow قوس قزح


rainy ممطر


storm عاصفة


sunny مشمس


ice ثلج

Extra vocabulary

weather	طقس	dry	جاف	climate	مناخ
summer	فصل الصيف	temperature	درجة حرارة	warm	دافئ
degree	درجة حرارة مئوية	Alexandria	مدينة الإسكندرية	London	مدينة لندن
cool	منعش	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة	Sharm El-Sheikh	مدينة شرم الشيخ
variety	تنوع	finally	في النهاية	Luxor	مدينة الأقصر
news	أخبار				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
rain	تمطر	rained	mean	يقصد	meant
try	يحاول	tried	bring	يجلب	brought

The hottest day ever in Egypt was 51.1°C, in Aswan. كان اليوم الأكثر حرارة على الإطلاق فى مصر بلغ ٥١.١ درجة مئوية فى أسوان.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• variety of	تنوع في	• in the day	في فترة النهار
• go down	تنخفض / تنزل	• at night	في الليل
• a lot more	أكثر بكثير	• by the sea	بجوار البحر
• per year	في السنة / سنويًا	• around 12 degrees	حوالي ١٢ درجة مئوية
• keep cool	يحافظ على برودته		

II Listening and Speaking

A weather woman and presenter are talking about the weather in Egypt.



Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.



Rainy in Cairo? **How often**[1] does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!



I know, but today it's rainy.



What about[2] Sharm El-Sheikh?



It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.



I don't **believe**[3] it! What about Alexandria?



It's going to be windy. That's **normal**[4] – it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.



Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?



Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

[1] كم عدد المرات
[2] ماذا عن
[3] يصدق
[4] عادى / طبيعى

III Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Which city is very green ? أي مدينة خضراء جداً ؟

The weather in Egypt



We have a nice variety of **weather**[1] in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the **temperature**[2] sometimes goes to 50 **degrees**[3] in some places!
Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 degrees.



The **desert**[4] has a very special **climate**[5], with very hot days and very cold nights. The temperature can go to 0 degrees. This **means**[6] that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo - there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It **brings**[7] the water from the south.

By the sea, it **rains**[8] a lot more - Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

[1] طقس
[2] درجة الحرارة
[3] درجات مئوية
[4] صحراء
[5] المناخ
[6] يعني
[7] يجلب
[8] تمطر

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. The Nile brings the water from the ....

a. north b. east c. south d. west

Practice 2. People who live in the desert try to keep .... at night.

a. warm b. cool c. sad d. fat

• Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص

الطقس في مصر : لدينا نوع لطيف في الطقس في مصر، على الرغم من أنها عادة ما تكون شديدة الجفاف. لدينا صيف حار جداً ودرجة الحرارة تصل في بعض الأحيان إلى ٥٠ درجة في بعض الأماكن ! الشتاء لدينا أكثر برودة ويمكن أن تنخفض درجات الحرارة إلى حوالي ١٢ درجة. يتمتع الصحراء بمناخ خاص جداً، حيث يكون النهار شديد الحرارة والليل شديد البرودة يمكن أن تصل فيه درجة الحرارة إلى صفر. وهذا يعني أن من يعيش في الصحراء يحاول أن يتفادى الحرارة في النهار ويحتفظ بالدفء ليلاً. وفي كثير من الأحيان لا تمطر في القاهرة - هناك حوالي ٢٥ مم فقط من الأمطار كل عام. إنها قليلة جداً عندما تنظر إلى لندن. تمتلك لندن حوالي ٦٠٠ ملم في السنة. يمكنك الآن معرفة سبب أهمية نهر النيل للجميع في مصر. إنه يجلب الماء من الجنوب. بالقرب من البحر، تمطر أكثر من ذلك بكثير - مدينة الإسكندرية لديها حوالي ثمانية أضعاف الأمطار عن التي في القاهرة. هذا هو السبب في أنها خضراء للغاية !

(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and complete.

1. The .... in the desert of Egypt is very special.
2. The desert in Egypt has very hot days and very cold ....
3. People in the desert try to keep .... in the day.

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. When the wind blows very hard, there is a ....
   a. cloud b. storm c. tree d. sun
2. People in the desert try to keep .... at night.
   a. warm b. cool c. icy d. snowy
3. A : .... is your favorite season ? - B : Winter.
   a. Who b. When c. What d. Where
4. .... often does it rain in Cairo ?
   a. When b. Where c. Why d. How

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Egypt has a nice	☐ a. the desert in the day.
2. The Nile is important	☐ b. hot summers in Egypt.
3. It's very hot in	☐ c. variety of weather.
4. We have very	☐ d. in winter.
	☐ e. because it brings water.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. green - very - Which - city - is ?

....

2. be - It's - to - going - windy.

....

3. important - Nile - the - Why - is ?

....

4. a very - has - The desert - climate - special.

....

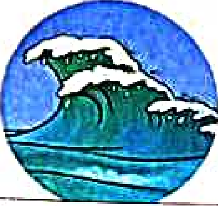
Lesson 2

▶ My heat wave story



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


tidal wave موجة مد وجزر


tornado إعصار


heat wave موجة حارة


sandstorm عاصفة رملية


flood فيضان


strong winds / storm رياح قوية / عاصفة

Extra vocabulary

store	متجر	outside	بالخارج	suddenly	فجأة
a cry	صرخة	nearby	مجاور / قريب	quiet voice	صوت هادىء
son	ابن	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	floor	أرضية
worried	قلق	lady	سيدة	shade	ظل
lemons	ليمون	lemonade	عصير ليمون	watermelon	بطيخ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
pass	يمر	passed	become	يصبح	became
knock	يطرق	knocked	feel	يشعر	felt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- cool us down تقلل درجة حرارتنا
- on the shady side of the street على الجانب المظلل من الشارع
- past all our friends' houses مررنا بكل منازل أصدقائنا
- At first في البداية
- in her 70s في السبعين من عمرها
- run outside يجرى خارجًا
- come back يعود
- come running يأتى مسرعًا
- get .... onto a chair يضع ... على كرسى
- a bit open مفتوح قليلًا
- lying on the floor مستلقى على الأرض
- fall down يسقط

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A heat wave story	store	I went to the store with my friend, Lamia.
	pass - cry	As we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry.
	floor - kitchen	Mrs Sohair was on the floor in the kitchen.
	help - chair	We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair.
	fell down	Mrs Sohair fell down because it was so hot.

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

My heat wave story
قصتى فى الموجة الحارة

The Beginning

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.



أصبح الصيف شديد الحرارة موجة حارة. وتحدث الموجة الحارة عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بشكل كبير فوق ٤٠ درجة مئوية، ولا يستطيع أحد فعل أى شىء. لقد مكثنا فى الظل وحاولنا شرب الكثير من الماء.

Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

طلبت منى أمى ومن صديقى لمياء الذهاب إلى المتجر (السوق) لشراء البطيخ والعنب والليمون لنصنع عصير الليمون ليخفض درجة حرارتنا. فذهبنا إلى السوق وعدنا من الجانب المظلل من الشارع ومررنا بكل منازل أصدقائنا.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture and read the story.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ القصة

The middle

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open, so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!' We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said.

وفجأة، أثناء مرورنا بمنزل السيدة سهير، سمعنا صوت صرخة. السيدة سهير هي سيدة لطيفة في السبعين من عمرها وتعيش مع ابنها ولكن ابنها يذهب إلى العمل أثناء النهار. شعرت أنا وصديقي لمياء بالقلق وكان باب منزل السيدة سهير مفتوح قليلًا لذلك طرقنا باب المنزل ونادينا "السيدة سهير!" في البداية لم يكن هناك رد، ولكن بعد ذلك سمعنا صوت هادئًا قائلًا : "أنا هنا!" دخلنا إلى المطبخ وكانت السيدة سهير ملقاة على الأرض وكانت تقول : "ساعدوني!"

The End

At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit.

في البداية لم نكن نعرف كيف نتصرف ولكن بعد ذلك أسرعت إلى الخارج ورأيت السيد منيب، الذي يعمل بالقرب منها، فناديت عليه قائلة "سيد منيب ساعد السيدة سهير من فضلك!" فأتى السيد منيب مسرعًا. وساعد الجميع في وضع السيدة سهير على الكرسي ثم أعطيناها الكثير من الماء وبعض من الفاكهة التي كانت لدينا.

She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot.

قالت السيدة سهير أنها كانت ذاهبة لتحضر بعض المياه من المطبخ ولكنها شعرت بالتعب وسقطت أرضًا لأن الجو كان شديد الحرارة.

She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

ولم تستطع النهوض. كانت السيدة سهير سعيدة أننا سمعناها ونحن كنا سعداء لمساعدتها!

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار

Learn 1. Who does Mrs Sohair live with?
– She lives with her son.

Practice 2. Why did Mrs Sohair fall down?
....

II Language Functions

1 To ask and answer about the weather :

١. للسؤال والإجابة عن الطقس :

• In the present simple tense في زمن المضارع البسيط

What is the weather like today ?

It is + حالة الطقس .





• In the past simple tense في زمن الماضي البسيط

What was the weather like yesterday ?

It was + حالة الطقس .





2 To ask about your favorite weather /season :

٢. للسؤال عن الطقس / الموسم المفضل لك :

What is your favorite + weather/season ?

My favorite + weather/season + is ....



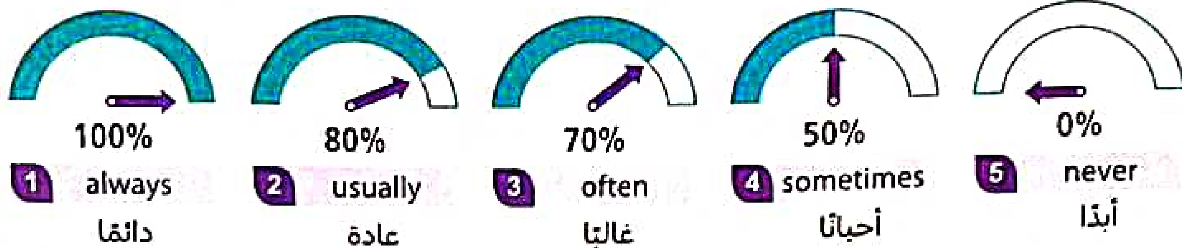


Notes for parents

- Help your child ask and answer about the weather. - ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب عن حالة الطقس
- Help your child ask and answer about his/her favorite weather/season. - ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب عن الطقس/الموسم المفضل له

III Language focus

1 Adverbs of frequency ا. ظروف التكرار



1. We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

- I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.
- He never goes to the park in the rain.

2. Adverbs of frequency come before the main verb or after (verb to be) in the sentence.

تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد "verb to be" في الجملة.

- We usually go out on Fridays. (قبل الفعل الأساسي)
- We are never late for school. (بعد verb to be)

Remember : The Present Simple Tense : زمن المضارع البسيط :



I - We - You - They - + التصريف الأول
اسم جمع (بدون إضافات)

1. Help your child know how to use adverbs of frequency.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم ظروف التكرار

2 How often .... ? ٢.كم مرة...؟

◀ تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما في زمن المضارع البسيط :

How often +	do +	I - we - you - they - اسم جمع	+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل	?
	does +	he - she - it - اسم مفرد		

◀ للإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار الآتية :

always / usually / often / sometimes / never



- How often do you walk to school ?
- I never walk to school.



- How often does he do his homework in the evening ?
- He always does his homework in the evening.



Pop Quiz on Language Focus

▶ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. She sometimes .... to the club.
   a. going b. go c. to go d. goes
2. I .... go to school on Friday. It's a holiday.
   a. ever b. never c. always d. usually
3. She .... a sandwich from this restaurant.
   a. always gets b. gets always c. always get d. get always
4. She likes music. She .... listens to music.
   a. always b. hardly c. never d. ever
5. How often do you .... your grandparents ?
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
6. How .... does she play tennis ? - She never plays tennis.
   a. many b. much c. often d. long
7. How often does he go to the library ? - He often .... to the library.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. went
8. How often do .... study English ?
   a. it b. he c. they d. she

Notes for parents

2. Help your child use "How often ... ?" to ask about frequency.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم "How often ...?" بمعنى "كم مرة ....؟" للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث.

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A .... is when the temperature goes very high.
   a. storm   b. sandstorm   c. heat wave   d. flood
2. The students .... late. They wake up very early.
   a. are never   b. are always   c. never are   d. always are
3. It's very hot in ....
   a. fall   b. spring   c. summer   d. winter
4. How often .... your sister go to the club?
   a. do   b. does   c. doing   d. is

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. I always go to	☐ a. side of the street.
2. We went to the store to	☐ b. because it was so hot.
3. My grandma felt ill	☐ c. the club on Saturdays.
4. We walked on the shady	☐ d. buy grapes and lemons.
	☐ e. a shower in the morning.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. cool – How – keep – do – a heat wave – you – in?

....

2. strawberries – does – How – she – often – eat?

....

3. get – helped – our friend – We – a chair – onto.

....

4. a shower – usually – She – has – Fridays – on.

....

(_) (_)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, I went to the store with my friend Sara. We went there to buy some fruit, watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down because it was very hot. The temperature was very high, it was above 40 degrees, so we came back on the shady side of the street.

As we were passing our grandma's house, we heard a cry. My grandma is 65 and lives with my uncle, but he goes to work in the day. We were worried because the door was a bit open. My grandma was on the floor! Sara helped me get my grandma onto a chair. We gave her lots of water. We were happy when we could help her.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A .... is a place where we buy fruit and vegetables.
   a. store b. office c. school d. shopping mall
2. When they heard a cry, they were ....
   a. happy b. angry c. worried d. calm

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did they come back on the shady side of the street?

....

4. Summarize the second paragraph into one sentence.

....

5 Punctuate the following.

i usually get up early

....

6 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

A heat wave

Guiding elements:

- What's the weather like in the heat wave?
- What should we do in heat waves?

....

....

....

....

....

(_) (_)



Lesson 3 ▸ Pronunciation

I Phonics

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

1 To distinguish between /b/ and /p/. ١. للتمييز بين /b/ و /p/.

/b/


bull ثور


bear دب

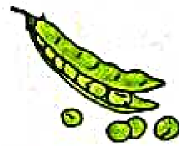

beach شاطئ


bee نحلة

/p/


pull يسحب


peach خوخة


pea بازلاء


pear كمثرى

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

• We make the sounds /p/ and /b/ at the front of our mouths, by pressing our lips together. But they are different.

ننطق الأصوات /p/ و /b/ في مقدمة أفواهنا، بالضغط على شفاهنا معًا. لكنهم مختلفون.

	/p/ "unvoiced sound"	/b/ "voiced sound"
How to pronounce : كيفية النطق	The air comes out of our mouths when we say it. الهواء يخرج من أفواهنا عندما نقوله.	The vocal cords vibrate when we say it. تهتز الأحبال الصوتية عندما ننطقه.
Try it : جرب القيام بذلك	1. Put a piece of paper in front of your mouth. ضع قطعة من الورق أمام فمك. 2. Say the sound /p/. قل صوت /p/. 3. The paper moves. تتحرك الورقة.	1. Put a piece of paper in front of your mouth. ضع قطعة من الورق أمام فمك. 2. Say the sound /b/. قل صوت /b/. 3. The paper doesn't move. لا تتحرك الورقة.

• Help your child listen to the words that have /p/, /b/ sounds and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات /p/ و /b/ ويرددها.

• Help your child read and learn the difference between /p/ and /b/ sounds.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم الفرق بين أصوات /p/ و /b/ .

2 The silent letters in words ٢. الحروف الصامتة في الكلمات

In English there are some words with silent letters - letters we don't pronounce. في اللغة الإنجليزية توجد بعض الكلمات ذات الحروف الصامتة - الحروف التي لا ننطقها.

silent "b" : climb	يتسلق	lamb	حمل (خروف صغير)
silent "w" : write	يكتب	wrist	معصم / رسغ
two	رقم ٢	answer	إجابة / رد
silent "k" : knife	سكين	knee	ركبة
silent "h" : hour	ساعة	silent "t" : castle	قلعة
silent "s" : island	جزيرة	silent "g" : sign	لافتة

II Listening script

He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky - he had a knife, so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him!



Notes for parents

- Help your child learn some words with silent letters.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم بعض الكلمات بحروف صامتة

(_) (_)



Pop Quiz on Phonics

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and tick (✓) the words with silent letter.

1. school ◯
2. beach ◯
3. knife ◯
4. wrist ◯
5. lamb ◯
6. island ◯
7. pea ◯
8. pen ◯

2 Listen and circle.

1.	2.	3.	4.
peach	pull	bee	bear
beach	bull	pea	pear

3 Read and circle the silent letters in each word.

1. hour
2. write
3. sign
4. island
5. castle
6. lamb

4 Look, read and circle.



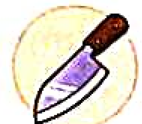
1. It's a .... (bear / pear).



2. There's a .... (bee / pea) on the flower.



3. I like to eat .... (beaches / peaches).



4. I use the .... (knee / knife) to cut fruit.

1. Ask your child to listen and tick (✓) the words with silent letters.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع علامة (✓) للكلمات التي بها حروف صامتة.
2. Ask your child to listen and circle the correct word.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.
3. Ask your child to read and circle the silent letters in each word.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الحروف الصامتة في كل كلمة.
4. Ask your child to look, read and circle.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر، يقرأ ويضع دائرة.

Lessons 4 & 5

▶ Writing
▶ Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

tornado	إعصار	dark	مظلم/داكن	electric wires	أسلاك كهرباء
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	candles	شموع	power cut	انقطاع التيار
flood	فيضان	unsafe	غير آمن	lightning	البرق
extreme heat / cold	شديد الحرارة/البرودة	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية	torch	كشاف

Extra vocabulary

classmate	زميل الدراسة	closer	أقرب	leaflet	منشور
wide	عريض / واسع	afraid	خائف	light	خفيف - ضوء
building	مبنى	scarf	وشاح	possible	ممكن
might	ربما	boots	حذاء ذو رقبة طويلة	tip	نصيحة
suddenly	فجأة	frightening	مخيف/مرعب	air-conditioning	تكييف هواء
shade	ظل	window	نافذة	scared	خائف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	hurt	يؤذي / يجرح	hurt
twist	يلوي/يلتف	twisted	shut	يغلق	shut
protect	يحمي	protected	drive	يقود	drove
contact	يتواصل	contacted	stand	يقف	stood
			strike	يضرب	struck

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• get dark	تصبح أكثر ظلامًا	• move away	يتحرك بعيدًا
• as much as possible	قدر الإمكان	• get bigger	يكبر / تزداد حجمًا
• bits of	قطع من / أجزاء من	• turn off	يطفئ

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Extreme weather	tornado	The tornado was a very big, wide, black cloud.
	destroy	The tornado hurt a lot of people and destroyed many homes.
	sand - sandstorm	There was a lot of sand in the air outside, it was a sandstorm.
	difficult - see	It was very difficult to see in a sandstorm.



Pop Quiz on vocabulary

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. It's not safe to touch the ....
   a. tables b. electric wires c. boots d. jewelry
2. .... is very important on hot days.
   a. Flood b. Sandstorm c. Air-conditioning d. Light
3. The tornado scares me. It is ....
   a. fantastic b. frightening c. wonderful d. nice

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the tornado and it was very frightening.

لقد كنت في المدرسة مع زملائي في الفصل، ثم بدأ يحل الظلام. ذهبنا للخارج ثم رأيت الإعصار وكان مخيفًا للغاية.


Tornado

It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses!

حيث أنه كان مثل سحابة سوداء كبيرة وعريضة. عندما اقترب منا الإعصار كان يكبر أكثر وكان يلتف. كان يمكننا أن نرى أشياء داخله، مثل الأبواب وأجزاء من المنازل!

When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

عندما اقترب منا، أصبح أكثر اتساعًا وأكثر ظلامًا. في اليوم التالي، اكتشفنا أن الإعصار أصاب الكثير من الناس، ودمر العديد من المنازل والمباني الأخرى.

• Help your child to look at the picture and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.


Sandstorm

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

ذات يوم كنت أنا وعائلتي نسير بالسيارة عبر الصحراء لزيارة أبناء عمومتي. بعد مرور عشرين دقيقة نظرت من النافذة ورأيت عاصفة رملية. بعد قليل كان هناك الكثير من الرمال في الهواء خارج السيارة وكانت الرؤية صعبة. أغلقنا كل النوافذ لكن الجو كان مظلمًا جدًا. كانت هناك سيارات أخرى على الطريق. هل كانت تلك السيارات ستصدمنا؟ لقد كنت خائفًا جدًا. حرك أبي السيارة بعيدًا عن الطريق وتوقف. لم نرى أي سيارات على الطريق لكن العاصفة الرملية تحركت ببطء. ثم فجأة تحركت العاصفة الرملية بعيدًا. ورأينا الشمس مرة أخرى وسرنا بالسيارة عبر الصحراء!

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Tips for keeping safe
نصائح للحفاظ على سلامتك

In extreme heat في الحرارة الشديدة

- Eat small, light meals. تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة.
- Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning. اقض وقت في المباني الباردة التي بها تكييف للهواء.
- Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty. اشرب الكثير من الماء حتى إن كنت لا تشعر بالعطش.
- Wear light, cool clothing. ارتدي ملابس خفيفة ومنعشة.
- Open the windows when there's a cool wind. افتح النوافذ عندما تكون هناك رياح منعشة.
- Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade. لا تذهب للخارج. إذا كنت مضطر للذهاب للخارج، ابق في الظل.

Notes for parents

- Help your child to listen and read the text.
- Help your child read and identify tips for keeping safe.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على نصائح الحفاظ على سلامته.

In a sandstorm في العاصفة الرملية

- Wear a scarf to protect your face. ارتدى وشاح لتحمى وجهك.
- Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth. ابق بالداخل حتى لا تدخل الرمال في فمك.
- Drive to the side of the road so you can stop your car. قم بالقيادة إلى جانب الطريق حتى تتمكن من إيقاف سيارتك.
- Make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in. تأكد من أن النوافذ مغلقة حتى لا تدخل الرمال للداخل.
- Cover your head and face as much as possible. قم بتغطية رأسك ووجهك بقدر الإمكان.
- Turn off air-conditioning to stop sand coming in. اغلق مكيف الهواء للحد من دخول الرمال.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

How to keep safe in a storm

What might happen in a storm? ماذا يمكن أن يحدث في العاصفة؟

- There might be very strong winds. ربما تكون هناك رياح قوية.
- There might be heavy rain and lightning. ربما تكون هناك أمطار غزيرة وبرق.
- It might not be safe to go outside - electric wires could fall. قد لا يكون من الأمان أن تخرج فربما تسقط أسلاك الكهرباء.
- There might be a power cut. ربما يوجد انقطاع في التيار.
- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help. الناس في الشارع والمنازل أو السيارات ربما يحتاجون لمساعدتك.

How can you protect yourself? كيف تستطيع حماية نفسك؟

- Stay inside and keep dry. ابقى بالداخل واحرص أن تكون جاف.
- Make sure you have candles and torches - there might be a power cut. تأكد أن يكون لديك شموع وكشافات - ربما يكون هناك انقطاع في التيار.
- Contact your friends and family to check they're safe. تواصل مع أصدقائك وعائلتك لتتأكد أنهم بخير.
- Don't go anywhere by train - this could be unsafe. لا تذهب إلى أي مكان بالقطار - فربما يكون ذلك غير آمن.
- Help anyone who is afraid. ساعد أي شخص يشعر بالخوف.
- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes. لا تقف أسفل الأشجار في حالة حدوث البرق.
- Don't stand near wires - they could fall and give you an electric shock. لا تقف بجانب الأسلاك - ربما تسقط وتصيبك بصدمة كهربائية.

• Help your child listen and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص

(_) (_)

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. How can we keep .... in extreme heat ?
   a. hot b. scared c. safe d. frightened
2. Try to spend time in cool buildings with ....
   a. air-conditioning b. fire c. heat d. oven
3. .... go outside if there's a sandstorm.
   a. Aren't b. Doesn't c. Don't d. Didn't
4. .... a scarf to protect your face in the sandstorm.
   a. Wears b. Wear c. Wore d. Wearing

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. I'll make a leaflet	( ) a. to stop the sand coming in.
2. In extreme heat,	( ) b. with my classmates.
3. Drink lots of water	( ) c. wear light, cool clothing.
4. Close the windows	( ) d. in extreme heat.
	( ) e. go outside.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, Hala and her family were driving through the desert to visit her cousins. After twenty minutes, she looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Hala was really <u>scared</u>. Her father moved the car off the road and they stopped. They didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. They saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about the ....
   a. tornado b. sandstorm c. flood d. lightning
2. The underlined word "<u>scared</u>" means ....
   a. happy b. angry c. afraid d. excited

(_) (_)

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How did Hala and her family stop the sand from coming in?

....

4. Why was it very difficult to see?

....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. might - very - There - strong - be - winds.

....

2. cover - In - face - your - and head - a sandstorm, .

....

3. school - was - I - at - with - my - classmate.

....

4. the - through - were - They - driving - desert.

....

5 Punctuate the following.

drink lots of water when it's hot

....

6 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

How to keep safe in a storm

Guiding elements:

- electric shock
- power cut

....

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة) للنص.

Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry in the desert. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperature can go down to around 12 degrees. It doesn't often rain in Cairo.



1. The text is about ....
   Or : The main/general idea of the text is about ....
   Or : The text talks about ....
   Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
   a. animals (b. weather) c. food d. water
2. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   The weather is nice in Egypt.

Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبقا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins and an extreme weather event happened. I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was very dark.

1. The text is about ....
   Or : The main/general idea of the text is about ....
   Or : The text talks about ....
   Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?
   a. extreme weather b. cool weather
   c. hot weather d. nice weather
2. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   ....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [الطقس القاسى] و [الطقس فى مصر] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Extreme weather	**Write the meaning :** في الخارج .... يدمر .... سحابة .... مخيف .... مظلم .... زميل دراسة	**Complete the sentences :** 1. Tornado is very .... 2. It started to get .... in tornado. 3. We see a very big, wide, black .... in tornado. 4. The tornado can .... many homes.	**Write paragraphs using the sentences :** "Extreme weather" ....
The weather in Egypt	مناخ .... معتدل البرودة .... حار .... تنوع .... درجة حرارة .... تمطر	1. We have a nice .... of weather in Egypt. 2. We have very .... summers. 3. Our winters are .... 4. The desert has a very special	"The weather in Egypt" ....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢١ جملة).

1 The weather in Egypt

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt[1]. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees![2] Our winters are cooler[3]. The temperatures can go down to around 12 degrees[4]. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights[5].

2 Tornado

The tornado is very dangerous[6]. It's a very big, wide, black cloud[7]. It can destroy many homes[8]. It can hurt a lot of people[9]. The tornado is frightening[10].

3 How to protect yourself in a storm

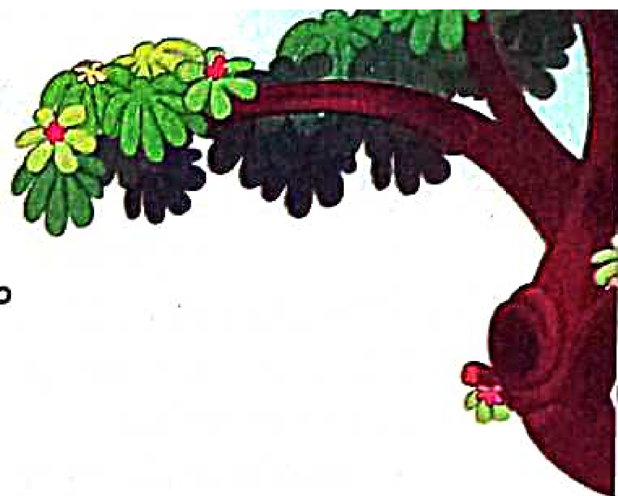
In a storm, you have to keep yourself safe[11]. Stay inside and keep dry[12]. Make sure you have candles and torches[13]. Don't stand near wires[14]. Don't go anywhere by train[15]. This could be unsafe[16].

4 How to keep safe in extreme heat

In extreme heat, we should drink lots of water, even if we don't feel thirsty[17]. We should open the windows when there's a cool wind[18]. We should wear light, cool clothing[19]. We should try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning[20]. We shouldn't go outside in hot weather[21].

Review on Unit 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة السادسة فى ورقة واحدة



Vocabulary

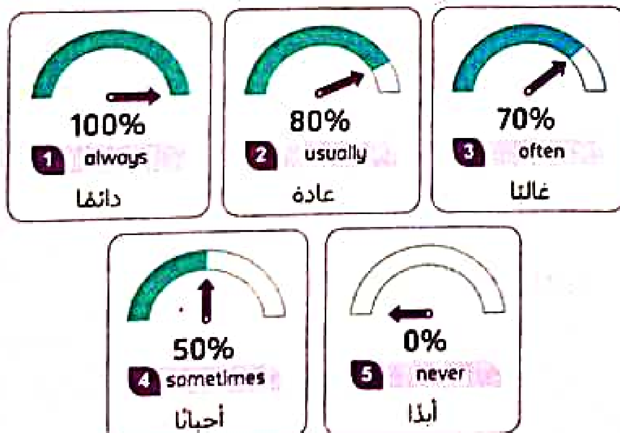
cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم
wind	رياح
snow	جليد
rainbow	قوس قزح
rain	مطر
storm	عاصفة
sunny	مشمس
ice	ثلج
tornado	إعصار
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
strong	قوى
flood	فيضان
heat wave	موجة حارة
shade	ظل
summer	فصل الصيف
winter	فصل الشتاء

Phonics

1. / b /
   bull – bear – beach
   / p /
   pull – pear – peach
2. silent letters
   climb – hour – wrist – knife – island – castle

Language

1 Adverbs of frequency.



- I always eat breakfast.
- They are always sad.
- He never walks to school.

2 How often ... ? كم مرة ؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما فى زمن المضارع البسيط :

How often + do / does + subj. (الفاعل) + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل) ?

- How often do you walk to school?
  - I always walk to school.
  - We never walk to school.

Test 11 on Unit 6

• نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Sara and her father were driving in the desert.
2. Sara saw a flood.
3. The air was full of sand.

2 Listen and complete.

1. It might not be .... to go outside in a storm.
2. We shouldn't stand near .... wires.
3. Electric wires could give us an electric ....

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I usually .... chicken for lunch.
   a. has b. to have c. have d. having
2. How often does Noha .... her mom in the kitchen ?
   a. help b. helping c. helped d. helps
3. There might be very strong wind in the ....
   a. storm b. sun c. snow d. candles
4. I saw the tornado and it was ....
   a. safe b. quiet c. frightening d. nice

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. What was the weather	a. a heat wave.
2. The tornado was	b. a very special climate.
3. The desert has	c. heard a cry.
4. The very hot summer became	d. frightening.
	e. like last weekend ?

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sara was at school with her classmates. Then it started to get dark. They went outside. Then Sara saw the tornado and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near them, it was getting bigger. They could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses!

When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. They could see it was moving slowly, and they could see it was damaging buildings. The next day, they found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The general idea of the text is "....................".
   a. Tornado   b. Heat wave   c. Sandstorm   d. Water
2. The underlined word "**destroyed**" means ....
   a. helped   b. damaged   c. moved   d. came

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What things could Sara see in tornado ?

....

4. What is the tornado ?

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. lots of – water – Drink – extreme – heat – in.

....

2. yesterday – like – was – What – the – weather ?

....

3. climate –special – has – The desert – a very.

....

4. your – How often – does – friend – football – play ?

....

7 Punctuate the following.

how do we keep cool in a heat wave

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

How to keep safe in a sandstorm

Guiding elements :

- wear a scarf
- air-conditioning

....

....

....

....

(__) (__)

Test 12 on Unit 6

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

(القاهرة / المعادى ٢٠٢٣)

1. In a storm, you have to keep yourself safe. ☐
2. You shouldn't stay inside. ☐
3. Make sure you have candles and torches. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

(أسيوط ٢٠٢٣)

1. We have a nice variety of .... in Egypt.
2. We have very hot ....
3. The .... has a very special climate.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. How often .... Dina do the washing up ?
   a. do b. does c. done d. doing
2. Sara .... walks to school. She always goes by car.
   a. never b. sometimes c. always d. often
3. In hot weather, you must stay in the ....
   a. share b. shade c. sun d. moon
4. He wears sunglasses to .... his eyes.
   a. see b. lose c. protect d. plant

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The weather is very hot (الإسكندرية / المنتزه ٢٠٢٣)	☐ a. light clothes.
2. It rains a lot (الدقهلية / دكرنس ٢٠٢٣)	☐ b. during storms.
3. Close the windows (الجيزة / الدقى ٢٠٢٣)	☐ c. in summer.
4. In extreme heat, wear (القاهرة / روض الفرج ٢٠٢٣)	☐ d. in winter.
	☐ e. heavy clothes.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our world is amazing. It gives us many things so we can have food, clothes, and build our houses. The things nature gives us are called natural resources. We use these to stay alive and keep healthy. Some examples of natural resources are water, clean air, animals; forests, soil, fossil fuels like oil and coal, and minerals like gold and copper. Water is the most important of all natural resources because all living things need it to stay alive. We use it to drink, to give to our animals, and to grow plants. We also use it for cleaning, for clean energy, and for transporting people and goods.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about "..................".
   a. tourism b. natural resources c. factories d. fertile soil
2. .... is not a mineral.
   a. Copper b. Plastic c. Silver d. Gold

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How does nature help us ?

....

4. Why is water important ?

....

[الدقهلية / نبروة ٢٠٢٣]

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the desert – dry – in – is – usually – It . [السويس / جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٣]

....

2. hot – Eat – meals – small, – light – weather – in. [الإسكندرية / برج العرب ٢٠٢٣]

....

3. often – How – he – does – school – go to ? [البحيرة / التحرير ٢٠٢٣]

....

4. high – very – goes – temperature – The. [بنى سويف / ببا ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Punctuate the following.

i always have lunch at home [الشرقية / ههيا ٢٠٢٣]

....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

The weather in Egypt

Guiding elements :

- special climate
- variety of weather

....

....

....

....

....

[بورسعيد / بور فؤاد ٢٠٢٣]

(__) (__)



STOP HERE!

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

▸ **Listen and choose the correct answer.** استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We have a .... variety of weather in Egypt. (bad - nice - lazy)
2. The .... has a very special climate. (desert - forest - grassland)

B. Language Functions

▸ **Read and complete the dialogue.** اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة.

protect - electric - shock

Amany : Do you know what happens in a storm?

Reham : Yes, I do. There might be very strong winds.

Amany : Can we go outside in a storm?

Reham : No. It might not be safe because (1) .... wires could fall.

Amany : How can we (2) .... ourselves?

Reham : We shouldn't stand near electric wires - they could give us an electric (3) ....

C. Vocabulary and structures

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. When it rains a lot, there is a ....
   a. sandstorm b. flood c. heat wave
2. Today, there is a .... I feel the heat of the sun.
   a. flood b. storm c. heat wave
3. I'm never late for our English class. I'm .... on time.
   a. often b. usually c. always
4. My sister often .... a book in the evenings.
   a. reads b. read c. is reading
5. I always have lunch at home, so I .... go to restaurants.
   a. usually b. always c. never

(_) (_)

Review 2

General Revision on Units 4,5&6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٤، ٥، ٦

I Vocabulary

Unit 4

Elephantine Island جزيرة الفنتين	eco-resort منتجع سياحي بيئي	coral reefs شعاب مرجانية
	rare نادر	preserve يحافظ
calendar تقويم	damage يدمر / يتلف	eco-friendly صديق للبيئة
reign عهد - فترة حكم	camp معسكر	hiking التنزه سيرًا
felucca مركب شراعي	eco-tourism السياحة البيئية	waterfalls شلالات
sunset غروب الشمس	local people سكان محليين	

Unit 5

female ruler الملكة الحاكمة	living things كائنات حية	rockpool بركة مياه صخرية
pharaoh فرعون	ecosystem نظام بيئي	grasshopper جرادة
scribe كاتب	seaweed عشب بحري	operation عملية جراحية
craftsmen حرفيين	non-living things كائنات غير حية	computer programmer مبرمج حاسوب
records سجلات	trader تاجر	fence سور

Unit 6

rainbow قوس قزح	a cry صرخة	power cut انقطاع التيار
wind رياح	tornado إعصار	lightning البرق
storm عاصفة	dark مظلم	electric wires أسلاك كهرباء
tidal wave موجة مد وجزر	electric shock صدمة كهربائية	torch كشاف
heat wave موجة حارة	cloudy مليد بالغيوم	sandstorm عاصفة رملية

(__) (__)

II Language Focus

Unit 4

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

Formation:

I - He - She - It / فاعل مفرد → was (wasn't)
We - You - They / فاعل جمع → were (weren't)
→ inf. المصدر + ing ....

• **Yes / No question:** أ. السؤال بـ (هل) :

Was / Were → subject الفاعل → inf. المصدر + ing .... ?

• **Wh-question:** ب. السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام → was / were → subject الفاعل → inf. المصدر + ing .... ?

Unit 5

1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل { s / es / ies

I/You/We/They/ اسم جمع → don't
He /She /It/ اسم مفرد → doesn't
+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل

2 must / mustn't

Subject الفاعل → must / mustn't → inf.

Unit 6

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار



How often → do (I/you/they/we/ اسم جمع) / does (he/she/it / اسم مفرد) → inf. مصدر الفعل ?

◄ للإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار الآتية : always / usually / often / sometimes / never

(_) (_)

Monthly Assessments | 1 October Test

اختبار شهر أكتوبر

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Ali doesn't like his school uniform. ☐
2. Everyone wears a white shirt and blue trousers. ☐
3. The girls wear a blue skirt. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1. My favorite thing to cook is ....
2. I turn the .... on to get it hot.
3. I mix the ingredients by ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We buy fruits and vegetables at the ....
   a. bakery   b. market   c. school   d. library
2. We use milk to make ....
   a. honey   b. yogurt   c. nuts   d. grapes
3. They are bad at ....
   a. painting   b. paint   c. painted   d. paints
4. I bought a .... bag.
   a. leather, small   b. small, leather
   c. leather, new   d. leather, black

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Chicken is my favorite	☐ a. fish for lunch?
2. How about having	☐ b. swimming.
3. I'm good at	☐ c. to make shoes.
4. The shoemaker uses leather	☐ d. healthy food.
	☐ e. to school.

(_) (_)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sara is my little sister. She is eleven years old. She likes sports a lot. Her favorite sport is squash. She plays it at the club with her friends. She practices squash twice a week. She won many prizes. She wants to be a famous player. My parents help her practice well. She is very clever and active.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "twice" means ....
   a. two days b. three days c. four days d. five days
2. Sara wants to be a famous ....
   a. teacher b. doctor c. player d. nurse

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who helps Sara practice well ?
....
4. How old is Sara ?
....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. market – sells – onions – He – at – the.
....
2. would – What – like – you – lunch – for ?
....
3. do – I – on – karate – own – my .
....
4. sneakers – I – pack – to – my – need.
....

7 Punctuate the following.

will you come to the market with me
....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY [40] words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite sport

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- good at
- practice

....
....
....

(_) (_)

2 November Test

اختبار شهر نوفمبر

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Most people worked as craftsmen. ☐
2. Farmers worked in fields. ☐
3. Farmers grew vegetables and fruits. ☐

2 Listen and complete.

1. Elephantine Island is in ....
2. I was traveling by .... to the island.
3. Elephantine Island is the .... part of Aswan.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Plants need .... and water to grow.
   a. electricity b. sunlight c. sugar d. salt
2. We must .... our homework.
   a. did b. does c. do d. doing
3. The .... are buzzing all the day.
   a. snakes b. ants c. cats d. bees
4. What were you .... at 4 pm yesterday?
   a. does b. doing c. do d. did

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Scribes	☐ a. to travel by plane.
2. Eco-tourists don't like	☐ b. write everything down.
3. I want to be	☐ c. shining.
4. The sun is	☐ d. a teacher.
	☐ e. animals.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days, I work inside and people bring their animals to me. On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind!

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "better" in the text means ....
   a. healthy b. unhealthy c. bad d. sad

2. Rana works with ....
a. insects　　b. animals　　c. people　　d. children

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How does Rana help animals?

4. Why does Rana go to people's houses or farms?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. want – I – to – a – be – vet.

2. is – important – Tourism – very – Egypt – for.

3. Egyptians – Ancient – successful – were – very.

4. are – What – you – doing?

7 Punctuate the following.

what is an ecosystem

8 Write an email of about FORTY (40) words about your visit to Elephantine Island to your friend Hany. Your name is Amir. Your email address is amir@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hany@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- How did you go there?
- Who did you go with?

New message ×

Secure https:

From :

To :

Subject :

( ) ( )

Skills



1. Blogs

How to write a blog : كيف تكتب مدونة :

1. Write about something you like and enjoy.
اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به

2. Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool"
اكتب لقراءك كما لو كنت تتحدث إليهم. استخدم الاختصارات (I'm, it's) وكلمات مثل (awesome) و (cool)

3. Use exclamation points (!) and emojis 😊 ☹️.
استخدم علامات التعجب (!) ورموز تعبيرية

4. Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
اعط رأيك ودع قراءك ليعطوا أرائهم.

5. Check that your spelling is correct.
تأكد من أن الهجاء صحيح.

A special trip

Sarah BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE 

Thursday, 17th May

A special trip

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center.

2. Diary

Tips to write a diary entry : نصائح عند كتابة مذكرة / يوميات

1. Write the date. ١. اكتب التاريخ.
2. You should start with "Dear Diary". ٢. يجب أن تبدأ بـ (مذكرتي العزيزة)
3. You should write about how you felt. ٣. يجب أن تكتب عن كيف كان شعورك.
4. You should use formal language. ٤. يجب أن تستخدم لغة رسمية.
5. You should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me".
٥. يجب عليك أن تستخدم الضمائر الشخصية مثل "I" و "me".
6. You should describe the places / events. ٦. يجب عليك أن تصف الأماكن / الأحداث.

Essam

April, 23rd

Dear Diary,

I live with my family in an apartment in Cairo. My apartment is big and there are many rooms. There are three bedrooms, a wide living room, a modern kitchen and two bathrooms My mother has a modern oven in the kitchen There is more space in the living room, so we have a big TV. We also have a fantastic balcony.

3. Text Messages

1 Tips to write a text message conversation : نصائح لكتابة رسالة نصية عبر محادثة

- **Use phrases to talk about plans** - استخدم العبارات للتحدث عن الخطط
  ex. Are you free on the weekend ? - هل أنت متفرغ في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟
  That sounds like fun! / That sounds great! / Cool! / Awesome!
  - هذا يبدو ممتعا! / يبدو رائعا! / رائع! / عظيم !
- **Use set phrases for making suggestions** - استخدم عبارات محددة لتقديم الاقتراحات
  ex. How about / What about meeting up ? - ما رأيك أن نتقابل ؟
  Let's meet at 3. - هيا نتقابل في الساعة ٣ .
- **Use emojis to make the conversation fun** - استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لجعل المحادثة ممتعة
  Use emojis to show things you want to represent, e.g. 🌵 a cactus for the desert.
  - استخدم الرموز التعبيرية لإظهار الأشياء التي تريد عرضها، على سبيل المثال : صورة صبار 🌵 لتدل على الصحراء.

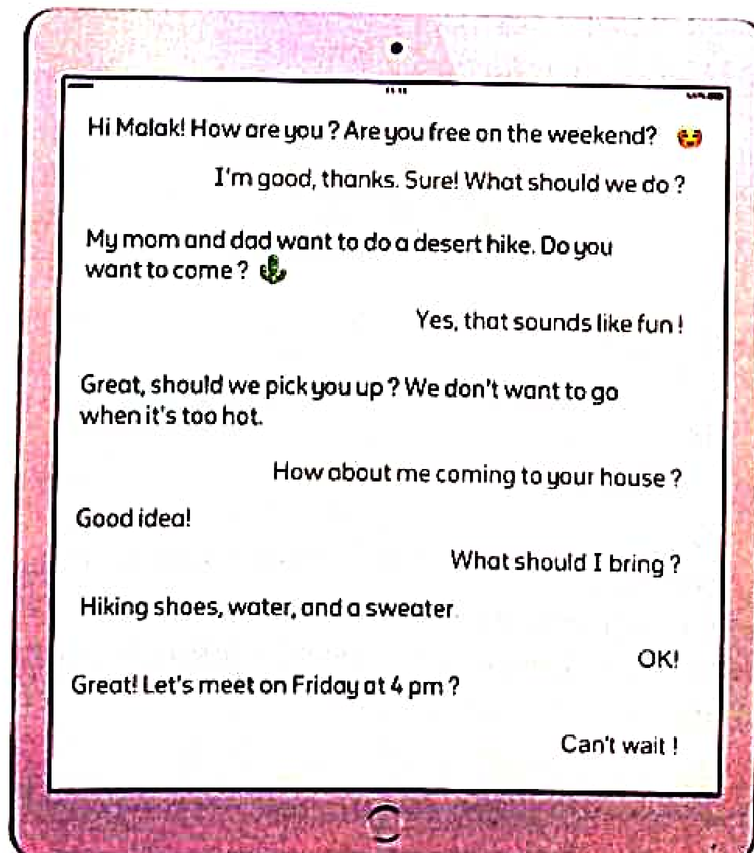
2 How to write a message : كيفية كتابة رسالة نصية

Dear .... ,	- عزيزي ...... ،
I want to	- أريد أن ......
....	
موضوع الرسالة	
....	
What do you think ?	- ماذا تعتقد ؟
I hope you like my ideas !	- أتمنى أن تعجبك أفكاري !
(Your name)	(اسمك)

3 Text messages : أهم الرسائل النصية

Dear class,
I want to tell you how to stay healthy.
First, we should eat healthy food. Fruit and vegetables are very important for our bodies. We shouldn't have much sweets. Secondly, we should do exercises every day to keep fit. Finally, we should sleep well and drink much water.
I hope you like my ideas !
Nader

4 Text messages conversation : أهم الرسائل النصية عبر محادثة





Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 1

Lesson 1:

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Sara and her family love practicing different sports. They enjoy playing basketball, football, and tennis. Ali likes playing basketball the most. Ali plays basketball in the club.

• Listen and complete.

Donia's favorite food is chocolate. Chocolate is unhealthy. She likes chicken, fish and rice. Donia likes playing sports with her brother.

Lesson 2:

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

I really like visiting my Grandma's house. My grandma has a mango tree in her garden. She has got a lemon tree, too.

We usually have fresh lemons and mangoes from her garden.

Lesson 3:

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Jack went to the market to sell his cow. On his way, he met an old man who was selling beans. Jack wasn't interested in buying the beans, but Jack bought the beans at last.

• Listen and complete.

Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. He climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside the castle to see if anyone needed help.

Lessons 4 & 5:

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

To make basbousa, we put honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. We boil the mixture for about ten minutes until it becomes thick syrup. Finally, we pour the syrup over the basbousa.

Test (1) on Unit (1):

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

That's the recipe to make basbousa. We put honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. We boil the mixture for about ten minutes. We pour the syrup over the basbousa.

• Listen and complete.

Sara and Rania will go to the market. They will go to the market next week. Rania wants to buy some carrots and tomatoes.

Test (2) on Unit (1):

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside the castle and saw a very big giant. The big giant was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the floor. Next to the hen were some golden eggs.

• Listen and complete.

Mona asks Hala about her favorite food. Hala's favorite food is fish because it's healthy. Hala eats fish three times a week.



Unit 2

Lesson 1 Part 1:

• Listen and complete.

Ahmed and Omar are friends. Ahmed is good at football. He usually plays football at the club. Omar likes watching matches on TV. Ahmed and Omar go to the sports club on Fridays.

Lesson 3

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Sara likes sports. She loves kicking a ball in a team with her friends. Her friend Dina is good at karate. Dina isn't good at playing volleyball.

• Listen and complete.

Heba loves tennis. She practices tennis twice a week. She usually uses her racket to play with her friend. Amany's favorite sport is karate. She wears her suit to do karate.

Lessons 4 & 5 :

• Listen and complete.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. Hedaya is a very famous person. Hedaya helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs.

Test (3) on Unit (2) :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Dalia is a young girl who loves running. She practices every day and has become very good at it. She can run very fast. In her free time, she likes watching films on TV.

• Listen and complete.

Seif is good at football. He plays football at the club. Ali is Seif's friend. Ali and Seif will play together in a team. They want to be good football players.

Test (4) on Unit (2) :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She won many prizes.

• Listen and complete.

Ayman is healthy. He likes sports. Ayman is very good at football He is in the school team. He is very bad at tennis.



Unit 3

Lesson 2 :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Samar and Aya are best friends. They are in the park today. Samar is wearing a blue dress with white flowers on it. Aya is wearing a hat on her head. They are sitting on the grass and having a picnic.

• Listen and complete.

I'm Noha. I'm doing a school project about clothes. Galabeya is a long white robe. It is made from cotton. It's usually white and it's very comfortable.

Test (5) on Unit (3) :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Marwa is going to a costume party tonight. She is wearing as a princess. She is wearing a pink dress with a crown on her head. She has white gloves on her hands.

• Listen and complete.

Our school uniform is really smart. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. Girls wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

Test [6] on Unit [3] :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

The galabeya is a traditional clothing. It's made from cotton. There are pockets, but they're hidden.

• Listen and complete.

My favorite type of clothes is the galabeya. It has two long sleeves, so I don't get sunburned. I love wearing galabeya in the summer.



General Exercises on units 1, 2 & 3

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

I had an awful nightmare. The air was black and toxic. My little brother was ill. He had to go to hospital.

• Listen and complete.

Jack went to the market to sell his cow. He met an old man on his way who had special beans. Jack wasn't interested in buying the beans, but he bought them at last.



Unit 4

Lessons 1&2 :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Last month, my friends and I went to Aswan. We visited the Elephantine Island. It is one of the greatest islands in the Nile River. The Elephantine Island took its name from its shape which looks like an elephant tusk.

Lesson 3 :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada and he tells tourists where they can dive. Normal tourism damages the natural environment, but eco tourism doesn't.

Test [7] on Unit [4] :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Tourism is very important to many countries. It gives jobs for local people. It helps people learn about new cultures. Sometimes it damages the natural environment.

• Listen and complete.

Last week, Rana visited the Elephantine Island. It is one of the greatest islands in the Nile River. She went there by felucca.

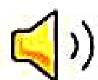
Test [8] on Unit [4] :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Yesterday, I went to Aswan. I visited the Elephantine Island. I went there by felucca. It is a fantastic place.

• Listen and complete.

Eco-tourism is very important to Egypt and other countries. Taba is a great place for eco-tourists. Eco-tourism works very well in Taba.



Unit 5

Lesson 2 :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest.

Lesson 3 :

- Listen and complete.

The ant is working hard. The ant needs to carry on with her work. Because we must think about the future, not just today.

Lessons 4 & 5 :

- Listen and complete.

I am Reem. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick, I help to make them better. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very clean.

Test [9] on Unit [5] :

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with your teammates to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself.

- Listen and complete.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women could weave baskets and bake bread. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Test [10] on Unit [5] :

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

I am a vet. I work with animals. I help sick animals get better. I lived on a farm when I was younger. I love the countryside.

- Listen and complete.

My father is a craftsman. He can make beautiful things. I want to be a craftsman like my father. I love making beautiful pots from clay. I think it is a good job for me.



Unit 6

Lesson 1 :

- Listen and complete.

The weather in the desert of Egypt is very special. The desert in Egypt has very hot days and very cold nights. People in the desert try to keep cool in the day. They try to keep warm at night.

Lesson 3 :

- Listen and tick (✓) the words with silent letter.

1. school	2. beach
3. knife	4. wrist
5. lamb	6. island
7. pea	8. pen

- Listen and circle.

1. beach	2. pull
3. pea	4. bear

Test [11] on Unit [6] :

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

Last week, Sara and her father were driving in the desert. It was windy and hot. Sara saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand, so they had to stop the car. The air was full of sand. They tried to return back but they couldn't see in the storm.

- Listen and complete.

There might be very strong wind, and heavy rain. It might not be safe to go outside in a storm. We shouldn't stand near electric wires. Electric wires could give us an electric shock. There might be a power cut. People might need your help. Try to be safe.

Test [12] on Unit [6] :

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

In a storm, you have to keep yourself safe. Stay inside. Make sure you have candles and torches. Contact your friends

and family to check they are safe. Don't go anywhere by train and don't stand under trees.

• Listen and complete.

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights.

October Test :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

I'm Ali. I like my school uniform. Everyone wears a white shirt and blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. The girls wear a white shirt but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue skirt.

• Listen and complete.

I cook lots of different things. My favorite thing to cook is basbousa. First, I turn the oven on to get it hot. Then I weigh out the ingredients. I mix the ingredients by hand. I love doing this.

November Test :

• Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Most people worked as farmers. Farmers worked in fields. They planted crops usually grains like wheat, corn and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

• Listen and complete.

I'm on Elephantine Island. It's the most fantastic place. It's in Aswan. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.

Al-Azhar Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالتدريبات
المجمعة لطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

Unit 1

I love chocolate. Chocolate is unhealthy if we eat it a lot. I also like chicken and fish. But my favorite is potatoes. My mother buys potatoes at the market.

Unit 2

I like to play football on the pitch. I wear my football boots to play with my friends. My sister always goes swimming in the pool. She uses her goggles to protect her eyes. My brother uses his racket to play squash.

Unit 3

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero. It's a traditional Mexican hat. There are lots of different styles of sombrero.

Unit 4

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. If you like history, there's lots to see there. You can find a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.

Unit 5

In Ancient Egypt, traders traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen and grains.

Unit 6

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees! Our winters are cooler. The desert has a very special climate.



Answers of Topics | إجابات الموضوعات الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 1

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Your favorite food"

It's very important to have healthy food. My favorite habit is having a variety of vegetables and fruits. Oranges for example are rich in vitamin C. All vegetables like tomatoes, carrots and corn have important fibers الياف and important minerals that our body needs. Never eat unhealthy foods. They are not good for our health.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

From amr@gmail.com
To hany@gmail.com
Subject My balanced diet

Dear Hany,

How are you and your family? I get up at seven o'clock in the morning. I have breakfast with my family. My breakfast consists of cheese, milk and bread They are all healthy foods. I have some vegetables and fruit because they have a lot of vitamins. I wish you good luck. Write to me soon.

Yours,
Amr

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Your favorite recipe"

My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. You need to turn on the oven to get it hot. Mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. Add yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake it in the oven for 30 minutes. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa and cut it.

Test (1) on Unit (1)

"Healthy and unhealthy food"

My favorite healthy food is chicken. I like it fried with some rice and salad. My favorite unhealthy food is chocolate. It isn't healthy because it has a lot of sugar in it. My mother buys chocolate for us, but we don't eat it a lot.

Test (2) on Unit (1)

"Your favorite fruit"

My favorite fruit is mangoes. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with mangoes. We can make delicious mango juice. I usually use mangoes to make fruit salad. Mango is healthy and all the family loves it. We have a mango tree in my grandpa's garden.

Unit 2

General Exercises on Lesson 1 Part 1

"Sports in Egypt"

There are a lot of sports in Egypt. Football, swimming, tennis and squash are the most popular sports. There are a lot of famous football players in Egypt. My sister likes practicing sports. She likes swimming. She usually goes swimming on Fridays.

General Exercises on Lesson 1 Part 2

"What can we do to protect our air ?"

It's important to protect our air. We need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less. We can use our bikes more. We should plant trees. We must work hard to do this.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

From : nour@yahoo.com
To : yassmin@yahoo.com
Subject : Sports I'm good at

Dear Yassmin,

I'm pleased to write to you. I am good at playing football. I like playing in a team. I am good at scoring goals.
I am also good at playing squash. I play squash with my friend Ammar.

See you soon
Yours
Nour

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Sports equipment"

John and Sara have sports equipment. John wears his football boots to play football. Sara wears her swimming goggles to go swimming. They use their squash rackets to play squash. They play tennis on the court. John wears his karate suit to do karate.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"A famous athlete"

Sherif Osman is a famous athlete. He won many awards. He can compete in important competitions. He wants to win new medals in the future. His favorite sport is weightlifting. He spends many hours training every day.

Test (3) on Unit (2)

"Famous Egyptian athlete"

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian athlete. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs to win a competition. She won many prizes.

Test (4) on Unit (2)

"A sport you like"

My favorite sport is swimming.
I began to learn swimming when I was seven. I love going to the beach and swim in the sea. I wear my swimming goggles and train every day in the swimming pool near my house. Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.

Unit 3

General Exercises on Lesson 1

From : adel@gmail.com
To : ali@gmail.com
Subject : A trip to Al Fayoum

Dear Ali,

How are you and your family ? I want to tell you about my trip to Al Fayoum.
I will go to Al Fayoum next week. My brother Aser and Mom will go with me.
We need to pack our suitcase. I will take my sneakers as we will walk around a lot.
Also mom will take her gold necklace. See you soon.

Yours,
Adel

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Clothes"

The Egyptian people wear many traditional clothes. Many men wear the galabeya. This is a long white robe that is very popular. It looks really cool to wear. It's made from cotton and is usually white. The sleeves are long, so we don't get sunburned. It has pockets, but they are hidden.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Clothes in Mexico"

Mexican girls like wearing traditional dresses. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Mexican girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. It is called a sombrero. There are lots of different styles of sombrero.

Test (5) on Unit (3)

"Our school uniform"

Our school uniform is smart. We wear a white shirt and blue trousers. We have to wear a blue striped tie. In winter, we wear dark blue sweaters. In summer, we can wear blue shorts.

Test (6) on Unit (3)

"Your favorite clothes"

My favorite clothes are jeans. I like the blue and black jeans. They have two pockets in the front and two pockets in the back. There is a hidden pocket to put coins in it. I love wearing round T shirts with the blue jeans. Jeans are comfortable and good when you are working outdoors.

Unit 4

General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

"Elephantine Island"

Last week, we visited Elephantine Island. It is a fantastic place. It's beautiful and calm. It is the oldest part of Aswan. It is full of history. We saw the sunsets and went for long walks there.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Pros and cons of eco-tourism"

Eco tourism is an exciting idea. It helps to protect wildlife. It looks after the environment. It helps local people. But eco tourism isn't as comfortable as normal tourism.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

From gasser@gmail.com
To tamer@gmail.com
Subject Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

Dear Tamer,

How are you ? Taba is good for eco tourism. We can find valleys, desert and the sea there. Eco-tourists can do different activities there. They can enjoy hiking and diving. They can stay in eco lodges. In Taba, local people are very friendly.

Yours,
Gasser

Test (7) on Unit (4)

"A fantastic place in Egypt"

Elephantine Island is one of the most fantastic places in Egypt. It is in Aswan. It is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history. Yesterday, I went to the island with my friends by boat. It is really a beautiful place. We had lunch there.

Test (8) on Unit (4)

"The importance of tourism"

Tourism is very important to a lot of countries. Tourism gives jobs to local people. It helps tourists learn about new cultures. But tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Also tourism damages the historical places or monuments. Tourists should try eco-tourism because it looks after wildlife, monuments and local people.

Unit 5

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Jobs in Ancient Egypt"

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. Farmers planted crops like wheat, corn and flax. Craftsmen used to weave clothes and make cooking pots. Traders traveled up and down the Nile buying and selling goods. Scribes knew how to read. Women could weave baskets, make sandals and sell them at the market.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

From : hassan@gmail.com
To : omar@gmail.com
Subject : ecosystems

Dear Omar,

How are you and your family ? I am going to tell you about ecosystems. Everything in the natural world is connected. The connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big like the Amazon rainforest. The living things can be like fish, crabs and seaweed. The non-living things can be like rocks, water, sand and sunlight.

See you soon.
Yours,
Hassan

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"Ants"

Ants work hard. They never stop working They are clever although they are tiny They are stronger than humans. They work in summer to store food for winter Really, they are amazing insects because they work in groups.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"Your future job"

When I'm older, I want to be a vet because I love animals. I think this is a good job for me because I like helping animals Some days a vet works inside. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very, very clean. The worst part of this job is if an animal gets sick in the night, I'll get out of bed.

Test (9) on Unit (5)

"Traders in Ancient Egypt"

There were lots of jobs in Ancient Egypt Traders in Ancient Egypt played an important role There were lots of goods in Ancient Egypt. These goods were gold, linen and grains. Traders traveled up and down the Nile buying and selling goods

Test (10) on Unit (5)

"The job of a vet"

A vet is an important job. A vet works with animals If an animal is sick or injured, a vet helps to make it better. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very clean. A vet goes to people's houses or farms to check on animals. A vet loves the countryside.

Unit 6

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"A heat wave"

A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees and no one can do anything. We stay in the shade and try to drink lots of water. We should drink a lot of water and fresh juice. We should wear light clothes.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

"How to keep safe in a storm"

It's important to protect yourself in a storm There might be a power cut in a storm. You should have candles. Contact your friends to check they are safe. Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes. Don't stand near wires, they could give you an electric shock.

Test (11) on Unit (6)

"How to keep safe in a sandstorm"

To stay safe during a sandstorm, wear a scarf to protect your face. Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth. Drive to the side of the road so you can stop your car Make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in Turn off air - conditioning to stop sand coming in.

Test (12) on Unit (6)

"The weather in Egypt"

Egypt has a nice variety of weather. It is usually very dry in deserts. In Egypt, we have hot summers. Our winters are cooler in Egypt. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights.

October Test

"My favorite sport"

I like sports. My favorite sport is football. I play football twice a week. I'm good at playing football. I am in the school team. I practice it with my friends. Football is good for my health.

November Test

From : amir@gmail.com
To : hany@gmail.com
Subject : My visit to Elephantine Island

Dear, Hany

How are you ? I visited Elephantine Island last Friday. I traveled with my family. We traveled by boat to the island. It's the most fantastic place in Aswan. It's the oldest part of Aswan. We could do lots of things there. It was a nice day. With my best wishes.

Yours,
Amir

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم : ٢٠١٠ - ٧ - ٢٠٣٨